VF UTE

OWNER'S HANDBOOK

HOLDEN

GM Holden Ltd, ABN 84 006 893 232 (hereinafter Holden)

Change of name, address or ownership

If you drive a pre-owned Holden, have moved house or changed any of your details, we'd like to hear from you!

Holden uses your details to keep your vehicle's factory provided Roadside Assistance and Warranty details up to date.

It also helps us let you know if there is an existing safety recall or rework on your vehicle. To update your details, please take a few minutes to fill in and mail the form at the back of the Service/Warranty booklet or visit Holden's website at: www.holden.com.au/forms/change-of-owner-details

GM Holden Ltd (Holden) is collecting the new owner's personal information in order to process the request for transfer for the specified vehicle. We may disclose your personal information to our related companies and third parties who provide us with (or help us provide) products and services, including to overseas locations such as the USA, and other countries in Europe, Oceania and Asia. Holden's privacy policy (available at: www.holden.com.au/privacypolicy) states how you can seek to access or correct any personal information Holden holds about you, how to complain about a privacy breach by Holden and how Holden will deal with a privacy complaint.
You can contact Holden on 1800 033 349 or alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at: holdencustomercare@gm.com

Note: Please refer to the inside front cover of the Service/Warranty booklet for the Vehicle Identification Certificate.

Printed in Australia
Part No. 92458701
April 2015
(MY15 VF Ute. Print 2)

© 2015 GM Holden Ltd
Reproduction in whole or part is
prohibited without written approval from
GM Holden Ltd, ABN 84 006 893 232

2015 Holden VF Ute Owner Manual

In Brief 1-1
Initial Drive Information 1-1

Keys, Doors, and Windows 2-1
Keys and Locks 2-1
Vehicle Security 2-13
Exterior Mirrors 2-15
Interior Mirrors 2-15
Windows 2-16

Seats and Restraints 3-1
Head Restraints 3-1
Front Seats 3-2
Seat Belts 3-5
Airbag System 3-7
Child Restraints 3-12

Storage 4-1
Storage Compartments 4-1
Additional Storage Features ... 4-4
Information on Loading the Vehicle 4-11

Instruments and Controls 5-1
Instrument Panel Overview 5-3
Controls 5-5
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 5-10
Information Displays 5-20
Vehicle Messages 5-24
Vehicle Personalisation 5-30

Lighting 6-1
Exterior Lighting 6-1
Interior Lighting 6-4
Lighting Features 6-6

Infotainment System 7-1
Introduction 7-1
Radio 7-15
Audio Players 7-27
Navigation 7-39
Voice Recognition 7-59
Settings 7-64
Bluetooth Phone/Devices 7-66

Climate Controls 8-1
Climate Control Systems 8-1
Air Vents 8-6
Maintenance 8-7

Driving and Operating 9-1
Driving Information 9-2
Starting and Operating 9-2
Automatic Transmission 9-8
Manual Transmission 9-13
Brakes 9-14
Ride Control Systems 9-17
Cruise Control 9-21
Object Detection Systems 9-23
Driver Assistance Systems ... 9-36
Fuel 9-39
Towing 9-42
Conversions and Add-Ons ... 9-47

Vehicle Care 10-1
General Information 10-1
Vehicle Checks 10-3
Bulb Replacement 10-18
Electrical System 10-26
Vehicle Tools 10-35
Wheels and Tyres 10-36

Jump Starting 10-56
Towing the Vehicle 10-59
Appearance Care 10-59

Service and Maintenance . . . 11-1
General Information 11-1
Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts 11-2

Technical Data 12-1
Vehicle Identification 12-1
Vehicle Data 12-4

Customer Information 13-1
Customer Information 13-1

Index i-1

We thank you for choosing Holden and want to assure you of our continuing interest in your driving pleasure and satisfaction.

This handbook applies to the current VF Ute Series model. Therefore, due to different models and options, you may find reference in this Handbook to some equipment not fitted to your own vehicle.

Please note that all information, illustrations and specifications in this Handbook are based on the latest production information available at the time of printing.

Holden reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Introduction

This Owner's Handbook provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

Using this Manual

- The In brief section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each chapter shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Depending on the model variant, integrated special equipment and accessories, the scope of equipment of your vehicle can differ from the descriptions in this Owner's Handbook.
- The *Bluetooth* ® word mark and logo are registered trademarks and are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.
- iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.
- ESP® is a registered trademark of Daimler AG.

Danger, Warnings, and Cautions

⚠ Danger

Text marked ⚠ **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

⚠ Warning

Text marked ⚠ **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

⚠ Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

In Brief

Initial Drive Information

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 1-1
Door Locks 1-1
Seat Adjustment 1-2
Head Restraint Adjustment 1-2
Seat Belts 1-3
Mirror Adjustment 1-4
Steering Wheel Adjustment ... 1-4
Instrument Panel Overview 1-6
Interior Lighting 1-8
Exterior Lighting 1-8
Horn 1-9
Washer and Wiper Systems 1-10
Climate Controls 1-10
Parking 1-10
Transmission 1-11
Getting Started 1-11

Initial Drive Information

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

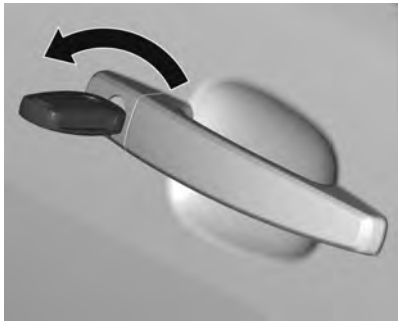
: Lock and arm the alarm

: Unlock and disarm the alarm

See *Keys on page 2-1*.

See *Door Locks on page 2-9*.

Door Locks



To lock, insert the key into the driver's door lock and turn towards the rear of the vehicle, then turn it back to the vertical position and remove.

This will lock the doors.

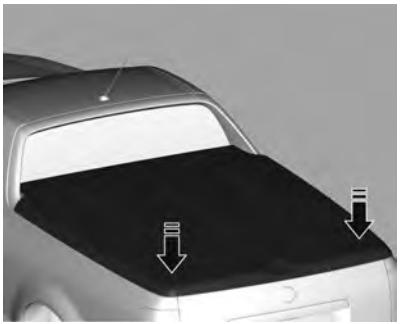
To unlock, turn the key towards the front of the vehicle to unlock the driver's door.

See *Keys on page 2-1*.

See *Door Locks on page 2-9*.

Tonneau cover lock

The vehicle may have a Genuine Holden Accessory hard tonneau cover.



1. Pull the cover down towards the load area.
2. Press down above the two locks until it latches securely.
3. Press or on the key to lock or unlock both doors and the hard tonneau cover.

Additional storage features, see *Tonneau Cover on page 4-4*.

See “Tonneau cover lock” under *Door Locks on page 2-9*.

Seat Adjustment

The vehicle may have the following levers and switches for seat adjustment.

1. Recline back
2. Lumbar
3. Up/down
4. Lift for forwards/backwards

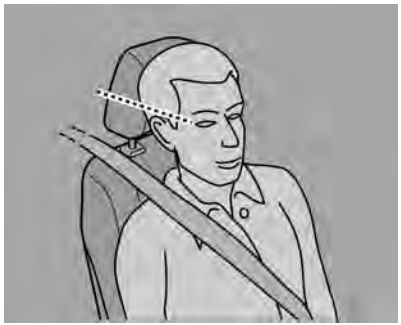
See *Seat Position on page 3-2*.

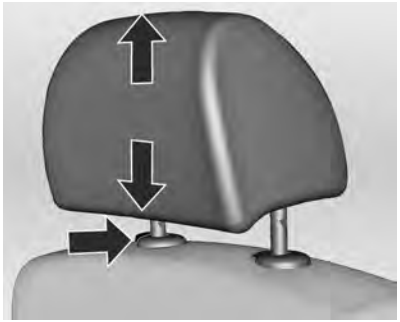
Head Restraint Adjustment

⚠ Warning

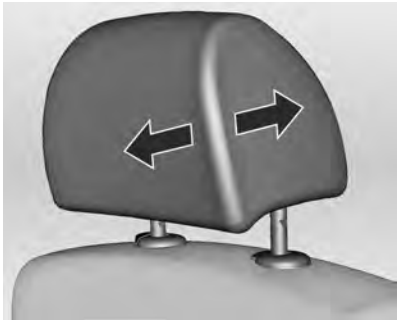
The head restraint is a safety feature.

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.





- Lift the head restraint up to raise it.
- Push the locking button and push the head restraint down to lower it.
- Front head restraints cannot be removed.



- To adjust horizontally, pull the front head restraint forwards and engage in one of three positions.
- To return to its rearmost position, pull fully forwards and release.

Seat Belts

Pull the metal tongue across your body into the buckle, until it clicks into place.

The belt should not be twisted. It should lie flat and fit firmly across your hips.

To remove, press the release button on the buckle to allow the belt to retract.

See *Three-Point Seat Belt on page 3-6*.

Mirror Adjustment

Rear view mirror

Push the lever on the lower edge of the mirror towards the front of the vehicle, then adjust the position of the mirror.

To reduce headlamp glare from following vehicles, pull the lever towards the rear of the vehicle.

See *Manual Rear View Mirror on page 2-15*.

Exterior mirrors

Power mirrors

L: Left side mirror selected

R: Right side mirror selected

●: No mirrors selected

To adjust an exterior rear view mirror:

1. Press the switch (2) to **L** or **R**.
2. Press the switch (1) to adjust the mirror.

See *Power Mirrors on page 2-15*.

Steering Wheel Adjustment

⚠ Warning

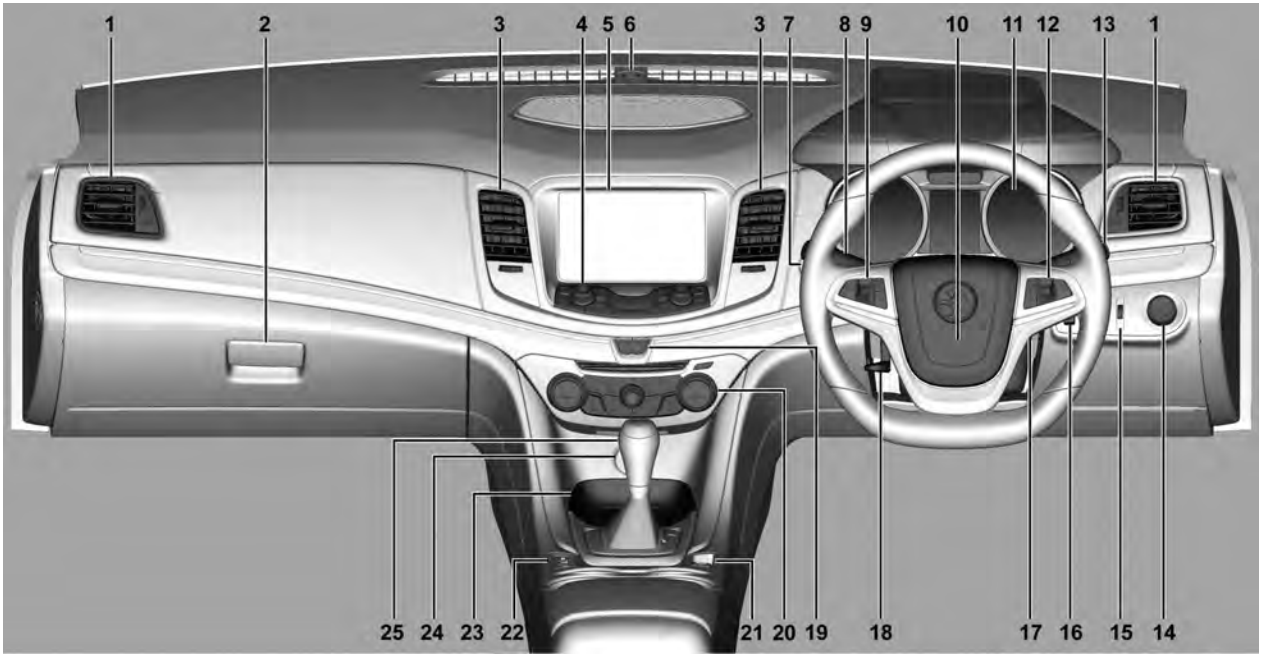
Do not attempt to adjust the steering wheel while driving.

1. Move the lever down to unlock.
2. Move the steering wheel up, down, closer or away.
3. Move the lever up to lock.

4. Ensure the steering wheel is locked in position before driving.

See *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-5*.

Instrument Panel Overview



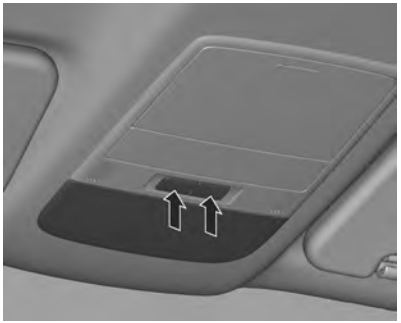
1. Vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents on page 8-6*.
2. *Glovebox on page 4-1*.
3. Vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents on page 8-6*.
4. Infotainment system controls. See *Overview on page 7-3*.
5. Infotainment screen. See *Overview on page 7-3*.
6. Sunlight sensor. See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-1*.
7. Engine Start/Stop button. See *Ignition Positions on page 9-4*
8. *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-7*.
9. Steering wheel controls. See *Cruise Control on page 9-21*.
10. *Horn on page 5-6*.
11. *Instrument Cluster on page 5-12*.
12. *Steering Wheel Controls on page 7-7*.
13. Lever for:

    Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-3.

    Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 6-1.

    Driver Information Centre (DIC) under *Instrument Panel Overview on page 5-3*.
14. *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.
15. Instrument panel illumination switch. See *Interior Lighting on page 1-8*.
16. Head-up display controls. See *Head-Up Display (HUD) on page 5-22*.
17. Ignition lock/switch (behind steering wheel). See *Ignition Positions on page 9-4*.
18. *Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 5-5*.
19. *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-3*.
20. Climate control switches. See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-1*.
21. *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-15*.
22. Electronic stability control switch. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-18*. Park Assist switches. See *Parking Assist on page 9-25*.
23. *Front Storage on page 4-2*.
24. 12 volt power socket. See *Power Outlets on page 5-8*.
25. Shift lever. See *Transmission Display on page 9-8*.

Interior Lighting



: On/off

: Door activated

See *Dome Lamps on page 6-5*.

See “Cabin storage area lamp” under *Dome Lamps on page 6-5*.

See *Glove Box Lamps on page 6-5*.

Exterior Lighting

: Off

AUTO: Automatic headlamps

: Park lamps

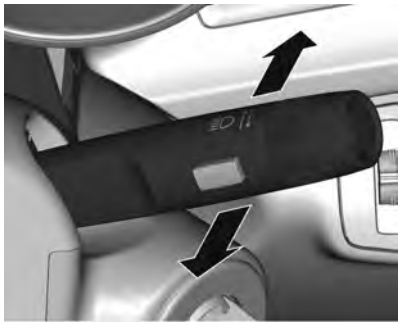
: Headlamps

: Fog lamps

: Instrument lighting dimmer

See *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.

High/low beam



High beam: Push lever

Low beam: Push the lever forward again

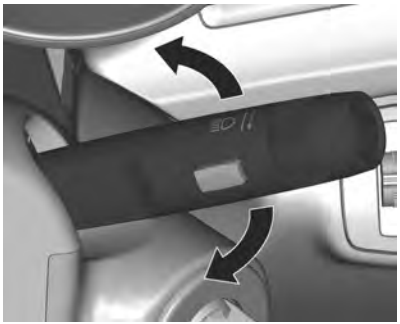
Headlamp flash: Pull lever

The high beam lamps can be flashed even if the headlamps and/or ignition are off.

See *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 6-1*.

Turn signals



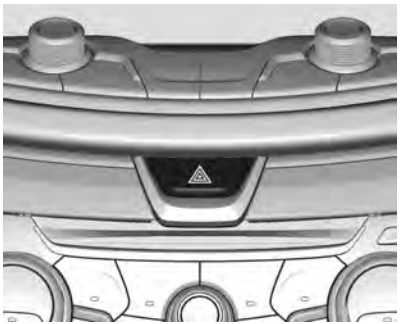
Left: Lever up

Right: Lever down

See *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.

See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-3*.

Hazard warning flasher



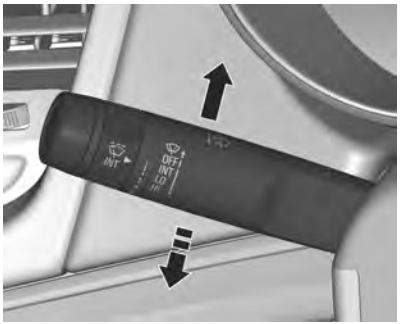
Press ⚠ to turn the hazard warning flasher on and off when the ignition is in any position.

See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-3*.

Horn

Press .

Washer and Wiper Systems



Mist: Wipers cycle while the lever is held up

OFF: Off

INT: Intermittent wipe

LO: Slow

HI: Fast

: Pull to wash the windscreen. The wipers will also cycle for a short time.

See *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-7*.

See *Washer Fluid on page 10-15*.

Climate Controls

The climate control panel is located in the centre of the dashboard.

Settings for the driver and passenger can be adjusted independently.

See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-1*.

Parking

1. Apply the park brake.
2. Automatic transmission: Select position **P**.

   Manual transmission: If facing uphill or on flat ground, select 1st gear. If facing downhill, select reverse gear.
3. Shut all windows.
4. Turn the ignition off and remove the key from the vehicle.
5. Press on the key to lock all doors and to arm the alarm system.

Transmission

Automatic transmission

P: Park

R: Reverse

N: Neutral

D: Drive

+/–: For Sport Shift mode, move the shift lever to position **D** then push to the left.

While in Sport Shift mode, move the shift lever to the **+** or **–** position to enable Active Select (A/S) mode.

See *Automatic Transmission on page 9-8*.

Manual transmission

Manual transmissions have six forward gears and a reverse gear. The shift pattern is shown on top of the shift lever.

To select **R**, move the shift lever sideways against spring pressure to engage reverse gear.

Note: On V6 vehicles, moving the shift lever with momentum will reduce the effort required to select **R**.

See *Manual Transmission on page 9-13*.

Getting Started

Check before starting

- Check that windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.
- Visually check tyre inflation. Check the tyre pressures each week.
- Ensure that all doors are closed and secured.
- Position your seat for comfortable driving.
- Adjust rear view mirrors.
- Fasten seat belts.
- Check that the warning indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on.

See *Driving Environment on page 9-2*.

See *Starting the Engine on page 9-7*.

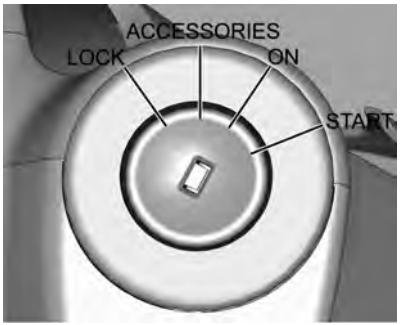
Starting the engine

⚠ Warning

Do not switch the engine off while the vehicle is moving as there will not be any power assist for the brakes.

Never remove the key while the vehicle is moving, as this will lock the steering.

The vehicle may have an ignition lock/switch.



LOCK: The key is inserted and removed only from the LOCK position.

ACCESSORIES: When the key is in the ACCESSORIES position, the audio system and wipers operate.

ON: When the key is in the ON position, the engine is ready to start and all electrical systems are active.

Do not leave the switch in the ON position for a prolonged period, unless the engine is running, otherwise the vehicle battery will discharge.

START: Turn the key to the START position momentarily and then release.

The engine starts automatically.

The key returns to the ON position when released.

See *Ignition Positions on page 9-4*.

Starting the engine with the Engine Start/Stop button

⚠ Warning

Do not switch the engine off while the vehicle is moving as there will not be any power assist for the brakes.

The vehicle may have an Engine Start/Stop button.

- The electronic key must be inside the vehicle.

- Manual transmission: Press the clutch pedal.
- Automatic transmission: Press the brake pedal and move the shift lever to P or N.
- Press the ENGINE START/ STOP button.

  The LED will illuminate.
- To switch the engine off, press the ENGINE START/STOP button again.

See *Starting the Engine on page 9-7*.

✍ NOTES

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks
Keys 2-1
INFOCARD 2-3
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-4
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 2-4
Remote Vehicle Start 2-7
Door Locks 2-9
Door Open Reminder 2-13
Automatic Door Locks 2-13

Vehicle Security
Vehicle Alarm System 2-13
Immobiliser Operation 2-14

Exterior Mirrors
Power Mirrors 2-15

Interior Mirrors
Manual Rear View Mirror 2-15

Windows
Power Windows 2-16

Keys and Locks

Keys

The key operates the locks and the ignition.

- Press to lock the doors and to arm the alarm system.
- Press to unlock the doors and to disarm the alarm system. See *Door Locks on page 2-9*.
- Press then press and hold for remote vehicle start. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-7*.

Panic/vehicle locate button

- To locate the vehicle, press briefly.

  The exterior lamps will flash and the horn will chirp.
- In an emergency, press and hold for at least 2 seconds.

  The horn will sound and the turn signals will flash.
- To cancel, press or turn the ignition on.

Foldaway key blade

The vehicle keys have a foldaway key blade.

1. Press the button to extend the key blade.
2. To retract the key blade, press the button and fold the blade into the key.

   The key engages audibly.

Matching transmitter(s) to your vehicle

Two keyless entry transmitters are coded to the vehicle.

If the vehicle's key is lost, inform a Holden Dealer immediately so the vehicle can be reprogrammed and will no longer recognise the missing key.

Additional transmitters also require re-coding to match the new transmitter.

Personal identity keys

The vehicle may have personal identity keys. Two sets of settings can be stored.

- All features can be customised. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-30*.
- Settings are stored when a personal identity key is removed.
- Press to recall the settings.

The features remembered by each of the two memories are:

- Vehicle configuration settings
- Climate control settings
- Radio settings

Features revert to the last setting used for each key.

Note:

- Two different memories are available, memory one and memory two.

  If a third key is made, the third key becomes memory one and the other two keys become identical memory two keys.
- The personal settings will not be applied until the button is pressed on the key and is identified.
- If the vehicle battery has been disconnected, some settings may be forgotten.

  The adjustments will be remembered the next time the features are adjusted.

About the keys

- The remote control in the key has a range of approximately 100 metres.

- The range depends on the charge of the key battery, on ambient conditions, the key's location and the area between them.
- If the key buttons do not work, move closer to the vehicle.
- Take care that no button is pressed unintentionally, especially when the vehicle is out of sight.
- Metallic window tint reduces the range of the key.
- If a door or the bonnet is open when is pressed, the horn will chirp twice.
- The key buttons may not work if the vehicle is parked near strong radio activity, such as under TV towers (most likely in high lookout car parks).
- Ensure that other keys on the key ring are not between the key and the vehicle.
- Always store spare keys in a safe, dry place.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- At times, a decrease in range may occur, which is normal.
- If the transmitter does not work:
  - You may need to stand closer during rainy or snowy weather.
  - Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.

  If you are still having trouble, contact a Holden Dealer.
- If pressing the key buttons does not work, the doors can be locked and unlocked by turning the key in the driver's door lock:
  - Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock the doors.
  - Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle to unlock the driver's door.

  Opening the door will cause activation of the alarm after a preset period of time. If this occurs, insert the key into the ignition and turn on.
- If the vehicle has a hard tonneau cover, the key locks and unlocks the cover and the doors.

INFOCARD

IMPORTANT SECURITY INFORMATION
KEEP THIS SECURITY INFORMATION IN A SAFE PLACE AWAY FROM YOUR VEHICLE
DO NOT STORE CARD IN WALLET
VIN (PSN) XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
IGNITION KEY No. XX-XXXXX
SECURITY CODE XXXX
GLOVE BOX No. XXXX
ENGINE No. XXX XXXXXXXXXX
Y#7 AGA AGB AQ9 AW5 AX2 AY0 A88 BMK B13 B58 CX5 D63 DL7 ESA E20 FE1 GW8 G80 JL4 JL9 L98 MYC NK4 NT3 N10 N40 N87 OAP P34 QUM R48 T77 T81 UE1 UFR UWD U30 U5J U71 V7M XW6 463 511 526 80U

The security card lists various security numbers for the vehicle, including key numbers.

Keep the card in a safe place, away from the vehicle.

If a key is lost, a replacement can be ordered through any Holden Dealer by quoting the key code number, security code number and providing proof of ownership.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

Do not make changes or modifications to the RKE system.

If there is a decrease in the operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer for service.

See *Starting the Engine on page 9-7*.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The transmitter functions may work up to 100 m away from the vehicle.

Keep in mind that other conditions, such as those previously stated, can impact the performance of the transmitter.

(Lock): Press to lock all doors.

If the driver door is open when is pressed, the passenger door locks, the driver door does not lock and the horn sounds twice.

If the passenger door is open when is pressed, the doors lock.

Pressing arms the theft-deterrent system. See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-13*.

When the doors are locked, the fuel door is also locked.

(Unlock): Press to unlock the driver door or both doors. See “Remote Door Unlock” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-30*.

The turn signal indicators may flash and/or the horn may sound to indicate unlocking. See “Unlock Feedback” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-30*.

Pressing will disarm the theft-deterrent system. See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-13*.

Pressing ⍾ will also unlock the fuel door.

The buttons on the keys are disabled when there is a key in the ignition.

Keyless Access Operation

Some vehicles have a keyless access system that lets you lock and unlock the doors without removing the RKE transmitter from your pocket, purse, briefcase, etc. The RKE transmitter should be within 1 m of the door being opened. If the vehicle has this feature, there will be buttons on the outside door handles.

The vehicle can be customised to always unlock all doors on the first lock/unlock button press. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-30*.

Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Driver Door

When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the driver door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on the driver door handle will unlock the driver door. If the lock/unlock button is pressed again within five seconds, the passenger door will also unlock. Pull the door handle to unlatch the door.

Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause all doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- It has been more than five seconds since the first lock/unlock button press.
- Two lock/unlock button presses were used to unlock all doors.
- Any vehicle door has been opened and all doors are now closed.

Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Passenger Doors

When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within range of the door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on the passenger door handle will unlock all doors. Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause all doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- The lock/unlock button was used to unlock all doors.

- Any vehicle door has been opened and all doors are now closed.

Passive Locking

If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this feature allows for selecting whether the doors automatically lock during normal vehicle exit. When the vehicle is turned off and all doors are closed, the vehicle will determine how many RKE transmitters remain in the vehicle interior. If at least one RKE transmitter has been removed from the interior of the vehicle, the doors will lock after eight seconds.

Temporarily disable the locking feature by pressing and holding the switch on the door for several seconds with a door open. Passive locking will then remain disabled until the switch on the door is pressed, or until the vehicle is turned on.

To customise whether the doors automatically lock when exiting the vehicle, see “Remote Locking, Unlocking, Starting” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-30*.

⚠ Caution

It is recommended that the RKE transmitter is kept on your person at all times. Shielding of the RKE transmitter or environmental electromagnetic radiation can interfere with the passive locking function.

Keyed Access

For accessing a vehicle with a dead transmitter battery, see *Door Locks on page 2-9*.

Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery

If the transmitter battery is weak, the DIC may display NO REMOTE DETECTED when you try to start the vehicle. The REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message may also be displayed at this time.

To start the vehicle:

1. Open the centre console storage and place the transmitter in the transmitter pocket.

2. Automatic transmission: With the vehicle in P (Park) or N (Neutral), press the brake pedal and press the Engine Start/Stop button.

   Manual transmission: With the vehicle in Neutral, and the clutch pedal pressed, press the Engine Start/Stop button.

   See *Starting the Engine on page 9-7*

Replace the transmitter battery as soon as possible.

Battery Replacement

Replace the battery if the REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message displays in the DIC.

The battery is not rechargeable. To replace the battery:

1. Push the button on the transmitter to extend the key blade.

2. Remove the battery cover by prying it open with a finger.
3. Remove the battery by pushing on the battery and sliding it toward the key blade.
4. Insert the new battery, positive side facing up. Push the battery down until it is held in place. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
5. Snap the battery cover back on to the transmitter.

Remote Vehicle Start

Vehicles with automatic transmission have remote start. It allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

(Remote Vehicle Start): The remote start button is on the RKE transmitter.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start.

Other conditions can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System on page 2-4*.

Starting the Vehicle

To start the engine using the remote start feature:

1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release .
3. Immediately after completing Step 2, press and hold for at least two seconds or until the

turn signal lamps flash. The turn signal lamps flashing confirms the request to remote start the vehicle has been received.

When the engine starts, the park lamps will turn on and remain on as long as the engine is running. The doors will be locked and the climate control system may come on.

The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. Repeat the steps to extend to 20 minutes. Remote start can be extended only once.

If the engine is running when you enter the vehicle, turn the ignition on. See *Ignition Positions on page 9-4*. If the engine is not running when you enter the vehicle, start the engine. See *Starting the Engine on page 9-7*.

Extending Engine Run Time

To extend to 20 minutes, repeat Steps 1–3 while the engine is still running. The remote start can be extended once.

For example, if the engine has been running for five minutes, and the remote start is extended, the engine will run for a total of 20 minutes.

A maximum of two remote starts, or a single start with an extension, is allowed between ignition cycles.

The vehicle's ignition must be turned on and then back off before the remote start procedure can be used again.

Cancelling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do one of the following:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press and hold ↻ until the park lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the vehicle on and then off.

Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Work

The remote vehicle start feature will not operate if:

- The key is in the ignition (key access) or if the key is in the vehicle (keyless access).
- The vehicle is unloaded.
- The bonnet is not closed.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- The malfunction indicator lamp is on.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.
- Two remote vehicle starts, or a single remote start with an extension, have already been used.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

Door Locks

⚠ Danger

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear seat belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.
- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.

- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop the vehicle. Locking the doors can help prevent this from happening.

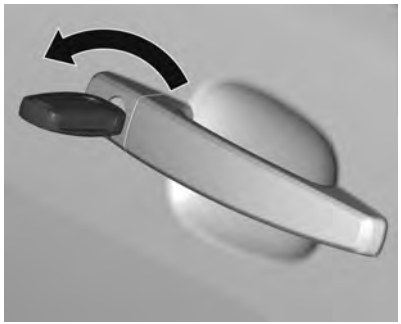
There are several ways to lock and unlock the vehicle.

From the outside:

- Press 🔒 or 🔓 on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

From the inside:

- Push down on the door lock snib on the top of the door.
- Pulling the door handle unlocks the door. Pulling the door handle again unlatches the door.
- Press 🔒 or 🔓 on the switch on the door.



- To lock, insert the key into the driver's door lock and turn towards the rear of the vehicle, then turn back to the vertical position and remove.

  This will lock all doors.

Note: This will not arm the alarm system.

- To unlock, insert the key into the driver's door lock and turn it towards the front of the vehicle to unlock the driver's door.

Note: This will not disarm the alarm system.

If the vehicle is unlocked using the key in the door lock while the alarm is armed, opening a door will activate the alarm. See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-13*.

Locking/unlocking from the inside

- To lock, press on the door to lock all doors.

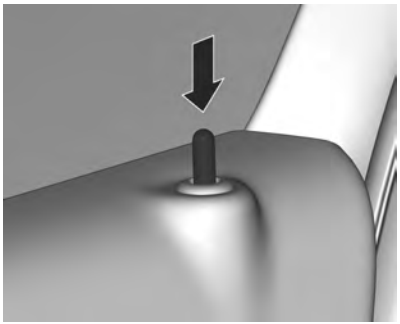
  This will not arm the alarm.

- To unlock, press on the door to unlock all doors.

- To unlock one door only, pull the interior door handle.

  Pull once to unlock, pull a second time to open.

Door lock snibs



- Pushing the snib down on the passenger door, locks only that door.
- Pushing the snib down on the driver's door, locks both doors. The driver's door will only lock if closed.
- A door is locked when the lock snib is down.
- A door is unlocked when the lock snib is up.

Free turning door locks

The door lock cylinder is designed to free turn if it is forcefully rotated without the correct key or if the correct key is not fully inserted.

1. To reset, turn the lock with the correct key fully inserted until its slot is vertical.
2. Remove the key, then re-insert it.
3. If the lock still free turns, turn the key 180 degrees and repeat the procedure.

Note: This feature is provided as a theft deterrent, to prevent the lock being forced open.

The force required to make the key free turn, reduces each time.

Do not attempt to demonstrate or test this feature.

Always remember to fully insert the key when locking and unlocking the doors.

If any problems occur, contact a Holden Dealer.

Hard tonneau cover lock

The vehicle may have a Genuine Holden Accessory hard tonneau cover.

⚠ Danger

Sitting or standing in the load area or on the surface of the hard tonneau cover while the vehicle is in motion may lead to serious injury or death.

Do not carry volatile materials or liquids within the load area while the hard tonneau cover is shut as harmful fumes or gases may accumulate.

Do not drive the vehicle while the hard tonneau cover is open.

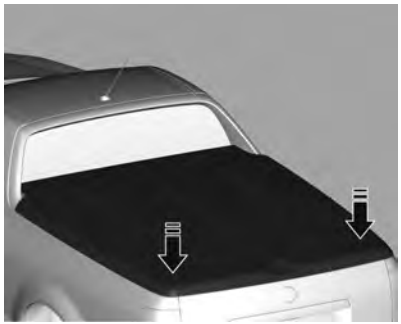
(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

In certain conditions, small amounts of dust and/or water particles may enter the load area via the hard tonneau cover.

Do not place heavy objects on the hard tonneau cover as this may cause damage to the cover which may not be covered by warranty.

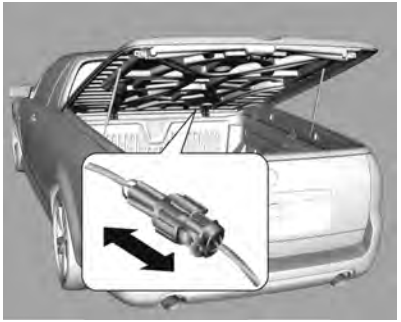
Locking and unlocking



1. Close the cover by pulling it down towards the load area.
2. Carefully press down above the two locks until it latches securely.
3. Press on the key to lock both doors and the hard tonneau cover.

   Press on the key to unlock both doors and the hard tonneau cover.

Note: The cover must be closed for the doors to lock. To enable the doors to be locked if the cover is to be left open, disconnect the wiring connector shown.

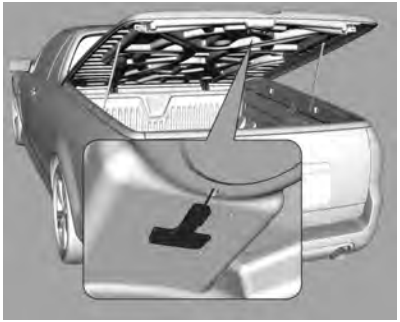


Manual unlocking

1. Insert the hard tonneau cover key into the lock.
2. Turn towards the driver side to unlock.
3. Push the lock barrel.
4. Lift to open.

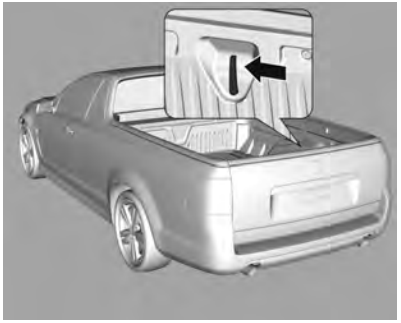
Note: If the hard tonneau cover key is lost or damaged, contact a Holden Dealer.

Emergency hard tonneau cover release



- The emergency release lever is on the underside of the cover, near the latch.
- The lever glows in the dark.
- Pull the lever to unlatch the cover.
- Push up the cover to open.

Tailgate latch



- The tailgate latch is located on the inside of the tailgate.
- To open, turn the latch towards the passenger side.
- To close, push the tailgate to the upright position until it engages.

⚠ Warning

Do not operate the vehicle with the tailgate in the open position as cargo may fall from the load area and the number plate will be obscured from view.

Door Open Reminder

A chime will sound and the appropriate door message will display on the Driver Information Centre (DIC) if one of the doors is not fully closed. This happens when the ignition is on and the shift lever is moved out of P (Park) or N (Neutral). See *Door open warning light on page 5-19*.

Automatic Door Locks

The vehicle can be programmed to lock all doors automatically when the following are met:

- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- The vehicle is shifted out of P (Park).

All doors will unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (automatic transmission) or when the ignition is turned off (manual transmission).

To customise whether the doors automatically lock or unlock when shifting out of or into P (Park), see “Door Lock in Park” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-30*.

Vehicle Security

Vehicle Alarm System

This vehicle has an anti-theft alarm system.

Arming the System

To arm the system, press on the RKE transmitter.

The alarm automatically arms after about 30 seconds. The security status LED on the top of the instrument panel illuminates and once the system is armed, begins to flash.

Disarming the System

To disarm the system, do one of the following:

- Press on the RKE transmitter.
- Approach the vehicle with the RKE transmitter (keyless access).
- Start the engine.

The alarm automatically disarms.

Immobiliser Operation

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The immobiliser activates itself automatically after the key has been removed from the ignition switch, or for vehicles with keyless access, when the engine is switched off by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button.

The system checks whether the vehicle is allowed to start with the key used. If the transponder in the key is recognised, the vehicle can be started.

The security light in the instrument cluster comes on when there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

The system has one or more transmitters matched to an immobiliser control unit in your vehicle. Only a correctly matched transmitter will start the vehicle. If the transmitter is ever damaged, you may not be able to start your vehicle.

When trying to start the vehicle, the security light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on.

If the vehicle does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the vehicle off and try again.

If the RKE transmitter appears to be undamaged, try another transmitter or for keyless access vehicles, place the transmitter in the transmitter pocket in the centre console. See “Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-4*.

If the vehicle does not start with the other transmitter or when the transmitter is in the pocket in the centre console, see your dealer.

Do not leave the transmitter that disarms or deactivates the theft-deterrent system, in the vehicle.

Exterior Mirrors

Power Mirrors

L: Left side mirror selected

R: Right side mirror selected

●: No mirrors selected

To adjust an exterior rear view mirror:

1. Press the switch (2) to **L** or **R**.
2. Press the switch (1) to adjust the mirror.

⚠ Warning

The passenger side mirror is convex shaped, to provide a wider view. Objects in this mirror are closer than they appear.

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rear View Mirror

Push the lever on the lower edge of the mirror towards the front of the vehicle, then adjust the position of the mirror.

To reduce headlamp glare from following vehicles, pull the lever towards the rear of the vehicle.

Note: The rear view clarity is reduced when the mirror is set to the anti-glare position.

Return the lever back to its original position as soon as the glare has disappeared.

Sun visor mirrors

To view the mirror, pull the cover up from the lower edge.

Windows

Power Windows

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

The power window switches are located on the doors.

Power windows can be operated:

- with ignition on
- within 10 minutes after switching ignition off
- if any door is opened within 45 seconds from the ignition key being turned off, the windows remain operational for 45 seconds.

Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Operation of front windows

Pushing or pulling lightly to the first detent: window moves down or up as long as switch is operated.

Pushing or pulling further to the second detent and then releasing: window moves down or up automatically with safety function. To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

Safety function on front windows

If the window glass encounters resistance above the middle of the window during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Safety function all doors

In the event of closing difficulties e.g. due to frost, hold the switch pulled to the second detent. The window moves up without activating the safety function. To stop movement, release and operate the switch once more in the same direction.

Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

Initialising the power windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. See *Vehicle Messages on page 5-24*.

Activate the window electronics as follows:

1. Close doors.
2. Switch on ignition.
3. Close the window completely and keep the switch pulled for additional 2 seconds.
4. Repeat for each window.

✍ NOTES

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
Head Restraints 3-1

Front Seats
Seat Position 3-2
Power Seat Adjustment 3-3

Seat Belts
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 3-5
Three-Point Seat Belt 3-6
Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy 3-7
Seat Belt Care 3-7
Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash 3-7

Airbag System
Airbag System 3-7
Front Airbag System 3-8
Side Airbag System 3-9
Curtain Airbag System 3-10
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 3-11
Notices for Customer Installed Equipment 3-11
Airbag System Check 3-11
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 3-11

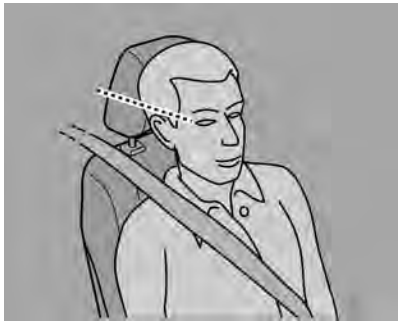
Child Restraints
Older Children 3-12
Infants and Young Children 3-13
Child Restraint Systems 3-13
Where to Put the Restraint . . . 3-14
Child Restraint Installation Locations 3-15

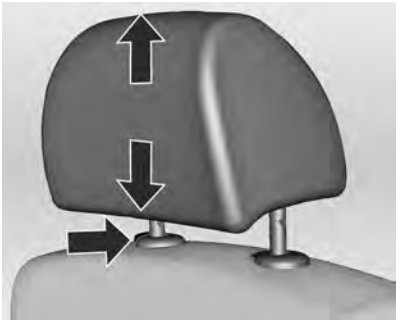
Head Restraints

⚠ Warning

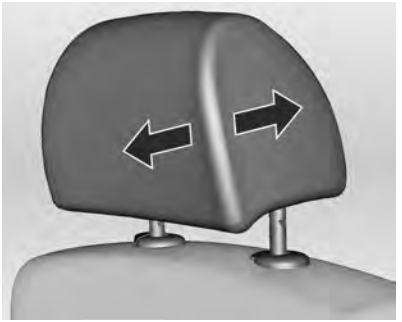
The head restraint is a safety feature.

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.





- Lift the head restraint up to raise it.
- Push the locking button and push the head restraint down to lower it.
- Front head restraints cannot be removed.



- To adjust horizontally, pull the front head restraint forwards and engage in one of three positions.
- To return to its rearmost position, pull fully forwards and release.

Front Seats

Seat Position

⚠ Warning

To avoid reducing the effectiveness of seat belts, seatbacks should only be upright or at most semi-reclined when the vehicle is moving.

⚠ Warning

Do not fit unauthorised seat covers, unauthorised seat covers may impair the operation of the side impact airbags (SIAB).

Always sit centrally in the seat.

Do not place any object between the seat and the door or the seat and the centre console. See *Airbag System on page 3-7*.

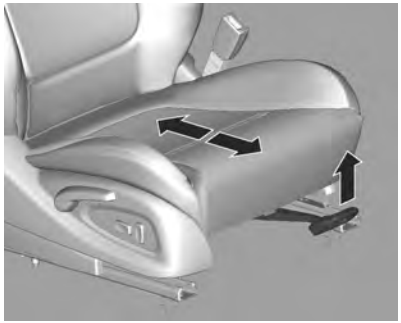
Power Seat Adjustment

Power Seat Adjustment

⚠ Warning

Do not adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is moving as the seat could move suddenly causing the driver to lose control.

The vehicle may have the following levers and switches for seat adjustment.



Forwards/Backwards

Move the seat forwards or backwards by lifting the handle at the front and sliding the seat.

Release the handle to re-engage the latch.

Try to move the seat back and forth to be sure the seat is locked in place.

Recline

Recline the seatback by lifting the lever. Release the lever when the seatback is in the desired position.

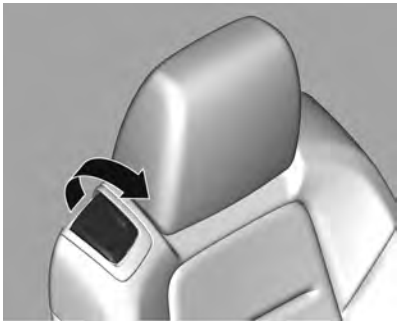
Note: Do not adjust the recline lever if the seatback has been tilted forward using the tilt lever.

Up/down

Raise or lower the seat by pressing the switch at the top or bottom.

Lumbar

Adjust the lumbar support by pressing the switch at the front or rear.



Tilt seatback

Tilt the seatback forward by pulling the tilt lever on the seatback.

To return the seat to its original position, push the seatback rearward until the latch locks in position.

Note: Ensure the seatback is fully locked in its rearward position.

⚠ Warning

Do not adjust the tilt latch lever while driving.

Ensure the tilt latch lever is locked and the seat is upright before driving.

Seat Belts

How to Wear Seat Belts Properly

⚠ Warning

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

Three-Point Seat Belt

Fitting

The belt should not be twisted. It should lie flat and fit firmly across your hips.

1. Pull the metal tongue across your body.
2. Clip it into the buckle.
3. When the metal tongue is locked safely into place you will hear a click.
4. Give a gentle pull on the buckle to ensure full engagement.
5. Settle the belt at the hip.
6. Run your hand under the sash from hip to shoulder.

The belt should fit comfortably. Any extra belt length retracts automatically.

Note: For your safety, wear the lap section of the seat belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist or abdomen.

The Emergency-locking Retractor Belt allows you to move while the vehicle is travelling normally, but locks immediately on fast braking, impact with a solid object or any quick movement by the wearer.

Removing

1. Press the release button on the buckle.
2. Allow the belt to retract.
3. Check that it fully retracts without twisting or turning.

Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy

Seat belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear a seat belt.

A pregnant woman should wear a three point belt with the lap portion of the belt worn as low as possible below the rounding of their stomach, throughout the pregnancy.

Seat Belt Care

⚠ Warning

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

Airbag System

Airbags and child restraints

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

⚠ Warning

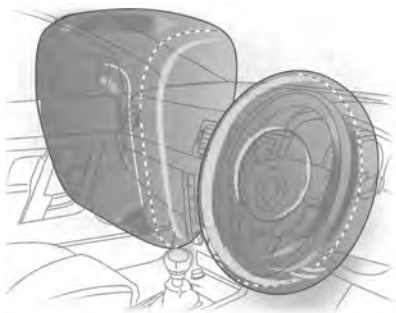
Airbags are part of the supplemental restraint system (SRS) as they assist, but do not replace seat belts. Airbags do not deploy in every accident. Various factors dictate whether they deploy including speed, angle of collision and object hit. Airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is hit from the rear or is involved in a rollover. Seat belts must be worn by all passengers whenever the vehicle is moving.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Airbags inflate with great force. If you are too close to an inflating airbag it may cause injury. Seat belts help keep you in position for airbag inflation in the event of a collision.

Front Airbag System



The airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel, and one in the dashboard on the passenger side. These are identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

⚠ Warning

The horn pad must not be covered with adhesive or any other material.

The driver should adjust the seat as far rearward as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

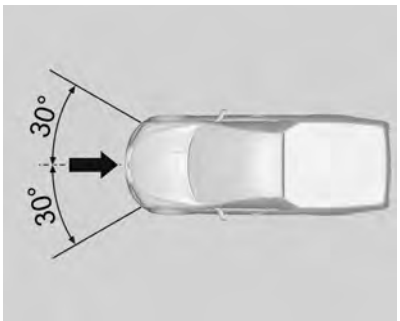
The wording **AIRBAG** above the glove box and a label attached under the sun visor indicate that a passenger airbag is fitted.

⚠ Warning

Do not place any objects on or over the dashboard or between an airbag and yourself.

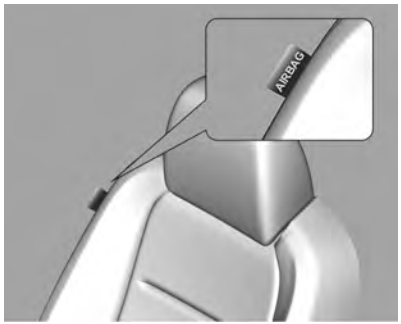
Do not hang anything from the sun visor or mirror.

Passengers must not rest their feet on the dashboard.



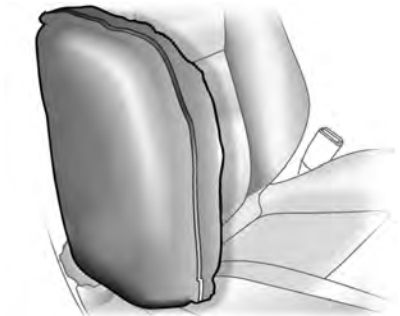
Airbags will inflate in certain severe frontal or near frontal impacts. Airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the side, rear or, in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

Side Airbag System



Side Impact Airbags (SIAB) are stored in the sides of the seats, the side closest to the door.

SIAB are identified by labels with the words **AIRBAG** on the seatback.



Note: SIAB deploy in most, but not all, severe side impacts.

Because there is limited time available to detect some side impacts, it is not possible to deploy the SIAB in all serious accidents.

A SIAB will deploy in certain severe side impacts. SIAB are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the front, rear, or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

⚠ Warning

Do not fit unauthorised seat covers as they may impair the deployment of the Side Impact Airbags (SIAB).

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) between front seats and doors.

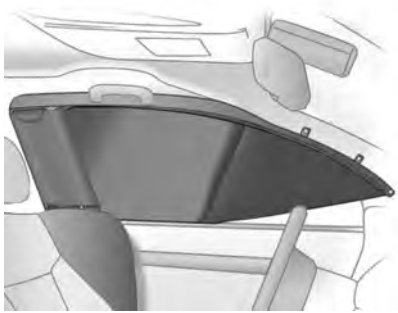
Do not lean on, or sleep against, the door. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

Curtain Airbag System

Curtain airbags are stored in the roof on each side of the vehicle.

They can be identified by the word AIRBAG on the roof pillars.



Note: Curtain airbags deploy in most, but not all, severe side impacts.

Because there is limited time available to detect some side impacts, it is not possible to deploy the curtain airbags in all serious accidents.

Curtain airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the front, rear, or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

⚠ Warning

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) in the area in which the airbag inflates.

There must be no objects in the area in which the airbag inflates. Refer to the previous illustration.

Do not lean on, or sleep against the doors. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

Airbags inflate and deflate within milliseconds.

Fifteen seconds after any airbag or seat belt pretensioner has been activated (the vehicle has stopped and provided there is battery power), the vehicle will:

- Switch off the engine.
- Switch off the fuel pump.
- Switch on the hazard lamps.
- Switch on the interior lamp.
- Unlock the doors.

Switch the ignition off and then on if restarting the engine is required.

Notices for Customer Installed Equipment

⚠ Warning

Fitting other types of roo bars may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling. See “Fitting roo bars” under *Add-On Electrical Equipment on page 9-47*.

Airbag System Check

The on the instrument panel illuminates for a few seconds when the ignition is turned on. This indicates that the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) is operational.

Contact a Holden Dealer immediately:

- If does not illuminate when the ignition is turned on.
- If illuminates when driving.
- If the warning **Airbag Fault** is displayed on the instrument panel.

  The SRS may not function correctly in the event of an accident. See *Airbag System on page 3-7*.

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

Note: After an accident where the SRS has deployed, the systems, associated parts and hardware must be checked and replaced as required.

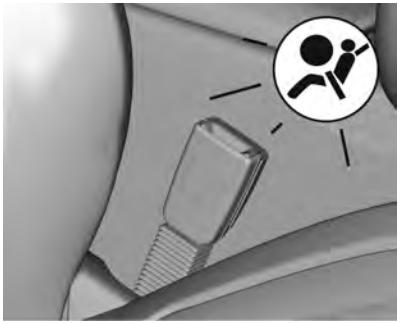
Seats, associated parts and hardware must also be checked and replaced as required.

The SRS should also be inspected after an accident if:

- The dashboard area or steering wheel is scratched, cracked or damaged.
- The seats and upholstery are damaged.
- The headliner or trim panels are damaged.

It is recommended that this work be carried out by a Holden Dealer or approved repairer.

Seat belt pretensioners



Seat belt pretensioners are part of the SRS. In certain severe collisions the seat belts are tightened by the seat belt pretensioners.

Child Restraints

Older Children

A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat.
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach.

- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest.
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip.

Infants and Young Children

Young Children

Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

⚠ Warning

Always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go before installing a child seat. This locates the child as far from the passenger airbag as possible.

Booster Seats

Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

⚠ Warning

Always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go before installing a child seat. This locates the child as far from the passenger airbag as possible.

Child Restraint Systems

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

⚠ Warning

This manual provides you with general information concerning child restraints only.

The driver is required by law to ensure that passengers are suitably restrained. In most States and Territories of Australia and New Zealand, specific laws may exist which require children to be seated in approved child restraints.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Holden strongly recommends that you refer to your specific State or Territory regulations to determine which child restraint is suitable for your child.

⚠ Warning

Always ensure that the seat belt fits firmly around the child restraint, as applicable to the type of restraint used.

If a child cannot see out of the window, do not raise him/her by means of an ordinary cushion. It will not stay in place in a collision and the child can slip out of the straps and become entangled.

⚠ Warning

Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's fitting instructions when installing a child restraint into the vehicle.

Note: Refer to the relevant legislation, an approved child restraint fitting station or capsule manufacturer's information for the recommended type of child restraint to use.

Where to Put the Restraint

⚠ Warning

Only child restraints that have clips to attach to the vehicle's anchorage fitting (as shown in the following illustrations) are to be

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

used. Earlier types of child restraints may not attach securely to this type of anchor.

Use only Standards Australia and New Zealand approved child restraints and harnesses. Only purchase a child restraint which carries the appropriate Standards Australia sticker of approval.

Australian States and Territories and New Zealand have laws restricting the seating of children in the front passenger seat. In most jurisdictions, children under 4 years should not be seated in the front passenger seat. Check your local road safety regulations before seating a child in the front seat.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Where legally allowable, you may install a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, but always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go.

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Note: If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, please contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

Child Restraint Installation Locations

Anchorage points

- Your vehicle has a single anchorage point for the fitment of a child restraint.
- The anchorage fitting is located behind the passenger seat on the cabin wall.

- Lift the head restraint up to thread the tether strap through.

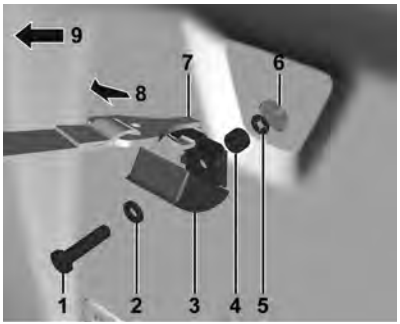
Note: Adjust the head restraint to the appropriate height once the child restraint is removed. See *Head Restraints on page 3-1*.

Holden child restraint fitting

⚠ Caution

If the child restraint anchor fitting is ever removed ensure that the bolt is securely tightened to 20 ± 5 N•m (Newton metres). Check with a Holden Dealer if unsure.

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.



1. 30 mm long bolt
2. Lock washer
3. Anchor fitting
4. 10 mm spacer
5. Paper assembly washer
6. Cabin wall trim
7. Attaching clip
8. To child restraint
9. Front of vehicle

Storage

Storage Compartments
Glovebox 4-1
Cupholders 4-1
Front Storage 4-2
Sunglasses Storage 4-2
Rear Storage 4-2
Centre Console Storage 4-4

Additional Storage Features
Tonneau Cover 4-4

Information on Loading the Vehicle
Information on Loading the Vehicle 4-11

Storage Compartments

Glovebox

The glove box is located in the dashboard, in front of the passenger's seat.

To open, pull the handle towards you. To close, push the lid firmly back into place.

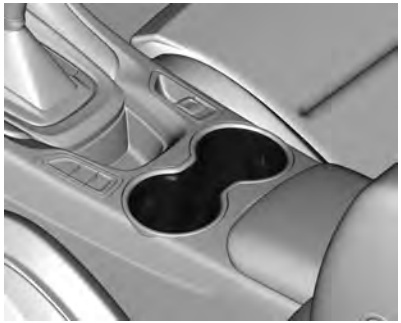
Cupholders

Cupholders are designed for holding standard size soft drink cans, small size bottles and cups with lids.Larger bottles may be stored in the door panel storage.

⚠ Warning

To avoid scalding, never place hot drinks in the cup holders.

Cupholders



The cupholders are located forward of the centre console armrest.

Front Storage

The front storage compartment is located below the climate control panel on the instrument panel.

Sunglasses Storage

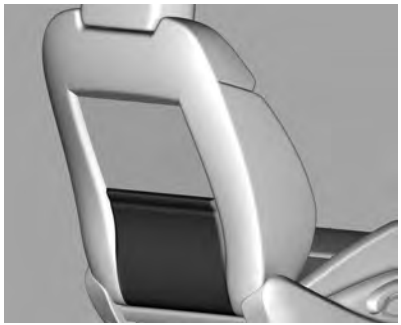
The sunglasses holder is located in the roof and is designed to accommodate one pair of sunglasses.

To open, push in the rear of the lid and release it.

To close, move the holder back to its original position and press in the rear of the lid to engage the latch.

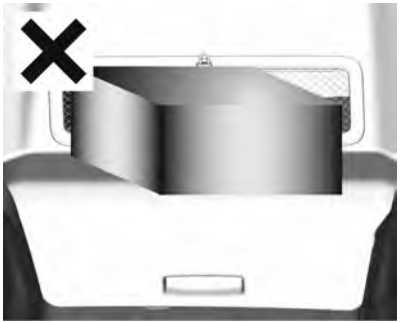
Rear Storage

Seatback Pockets



The storage pockets are on the rear of the front seats.

Battery storage compartment



⚠ Warning

Do not place any heavy, hard or sharp objects on top of the battery storage compartment behind the passenger seat.

Cabin storage compartments

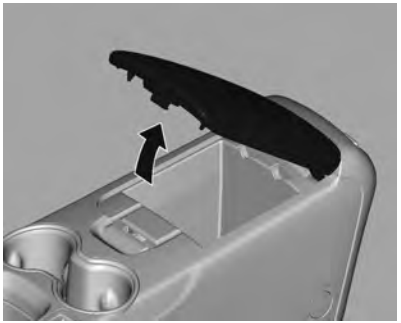
- Storage compartments are located at the rear of the cabin.
- Store lightweight items such as street directories, folders and maps not exceeding 2 kg in total.
- Ensure that the netting, netting loop and hook are secure and restraining items.
- Do not store heavy and/or sharp objects (e.g. loose tools) in these compartments.

Net pocket

The vehicle may have a net pocket.

The net pocket is located at the rear of the cabin, for the storage of lightweight items.

Centre Console Storage



A storage area is located under the front armrest.

To open, lift the latch on the underside of the front lip. Do not force the lid backwards.

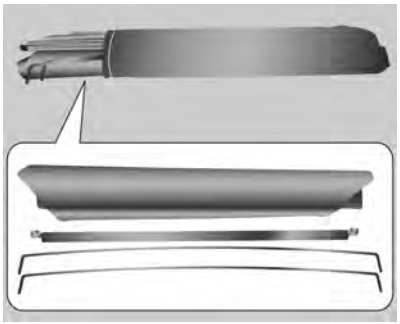
The console provides space to accommodate a standard mobile telephone/charger, which can be plugged into the power socket located inside the console. See *Power Outlets on page 5-8*.

Additional Storage Features

Tonneau Cover

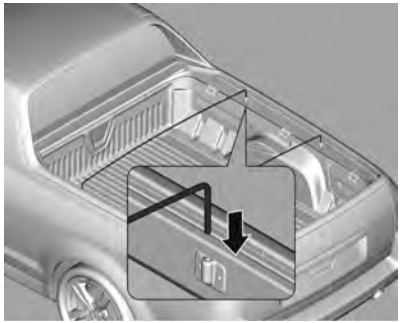
Soft tonneau cover

The vehicle may have a soft tonneau cover.



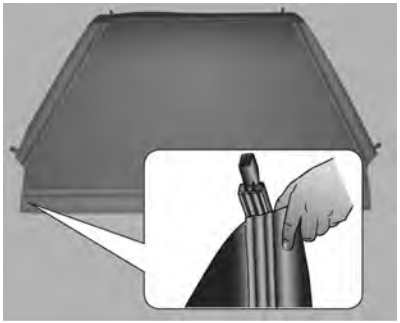
Installation:

1. Remove the cover, front bar and bows from the tonneau cover bag.



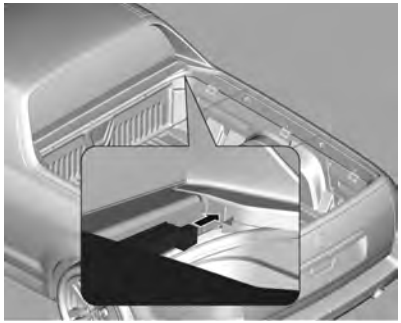
2. Slide each bow through the tonneau bow support bracket.

Note: The front bow is longer than the rear bow.



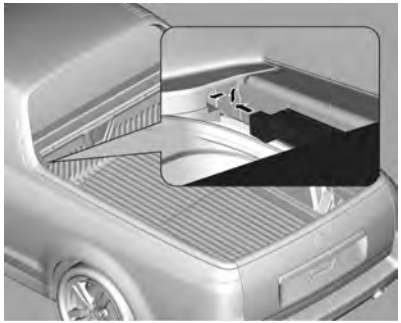
3. To attach the front bar to the tonneau cover, lay the tonneau cover out flat, with the inside facing up.
4. Using one of the three slots provided on the bar, slide the bar along the mounting strip on the forward end of the cover.

Note: When the cover is new, the centre slot should be used. As the cover ages, the other slots may be used to achieve a tighter or looser fit.



5. Place the tonneau cover roughly in position over the tray with the attached bar towards the front of the vehicle.
6. Fit one end of the bar into the slot on either the passenger or driver side.

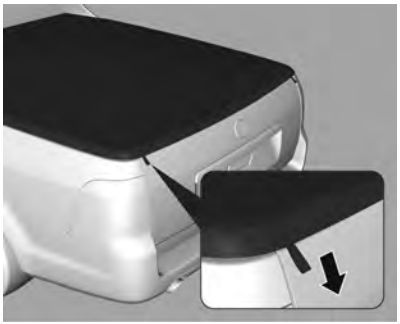
   Do not twist or bend the front bar when fitting the tonneau cover.



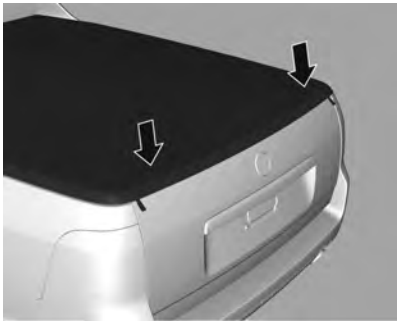
7. Position the other end of the front bar into the opposite slot and lift upwards and rearwards.

8. The front edge of the cover has a magnetic strip.

   Ensure it is seated down correctly.



9. Lay the tonneau cover over the bows.
10. Starting from the rear, use the finger loops to pull the cover's plastic strip over the slot provided around the top edge of the load area.



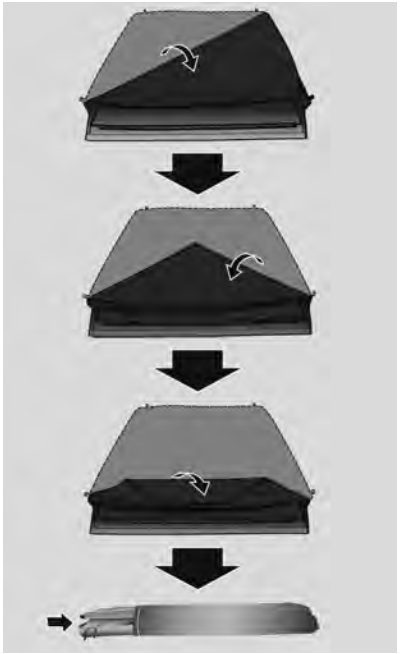
11. Push down with your hands to smooth the rear strip into place along the slot.
12. After the cover is attached at the rear, the same attachment method is used on both sides.
13. Begin near the front where finger loops are provided.

Note: The cover may be tight to fit when new.

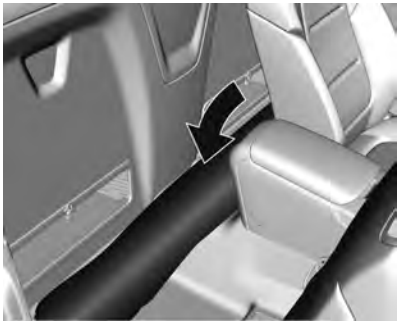
Removal:

1. Using the finger loops provided, remove the cover by pulling the loops out and up.
2. From underneath the cover, remove the front bar on one side, by pushing it towards the front of the vehicle and tilting down.

   The other end of the bar will follow.
3. Fold the cover to ensure the plastic sides are not bent.

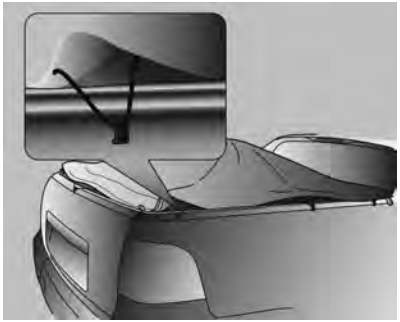


4. Lay the cover on a flat surface with the inside facing up.
5. Fold one of the rear corners up.
6. Fold the other rear corner up.
7. Fold and roll up the cover.
8. Place the folded cover, front bar and bows in the bag provided.



9. Store behind the seats.

Fitting the tonneau cover with high loads



1. Remove the two bows if required.
2. Attach the front of the cover. See *Tonneau Cover on page 4-4*.
3. Lay the remainder of the cover roughly in position.
4. Underneath the cover there is a cord with attaching clips.

   Working around the vehicle, place the clips in the slot provided.

5. To remove the cover, pull the clips out and up.

Hard tonneau cover

The vehicle may have a Genuine Holden Accessory hard tonneau cover.

⚠ Danger

Sitting or standing in the load area or on the surface of the hard tonneau cover while the vehicle is in motion may lead to serious injury or death.

Do not carry volatile materials or liquids within the load area while the hard tonneau cover is shut as harmful fumes or gases may accumulate.

Do not drive the vehicle while the hard tonneau cover is open.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

In certain conditions, small amounts of dust and/or water particles may enter the load area via the hard tonneau cover.

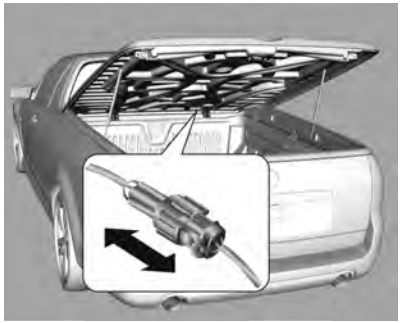
Do not place heavy objects on the hard tonneau cover as this may cause damage to the cover which may not be covered by warranty.

Removal of the hard tonneau:

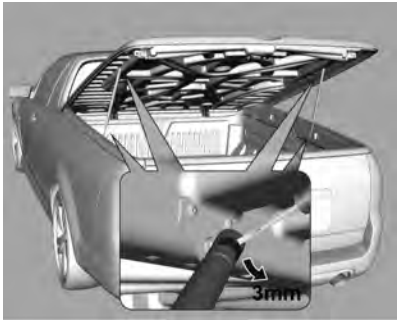
Two people are required to remove the hard tonneau cover.

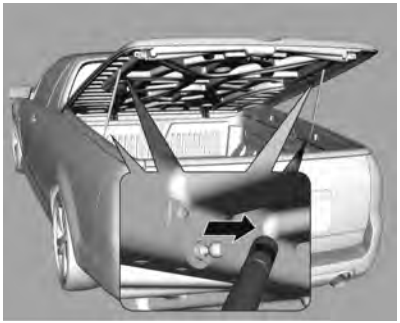
1. Open the tailgate.
2. Open the tonneau cover.

Note: Ensure there is enough room above the vehicle.

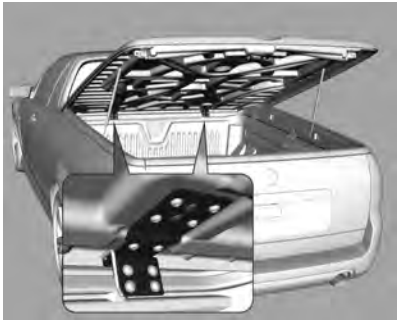


3. Locate the wiring connector and disconnect.
4. With the aid of a second person hold the tonneau cover open.

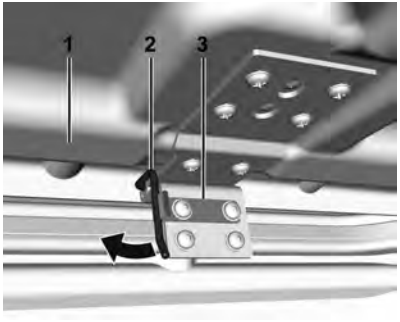


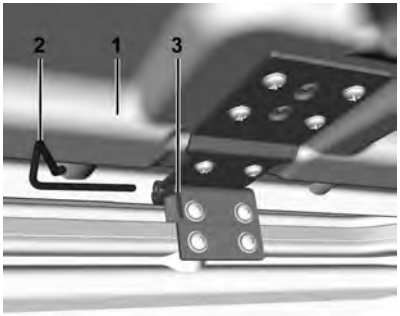


5. To remove the gas struts from the upper ball pins, use a small flat-blade screwdriver to lever the clips open approximately 3 mm.
6. While holding the screwdriver and the clip in the open position, remove the gas strut from the ball pin.
7. Lay the gas struts down in the load area.



8. Locate the hinges and the hinge pins.





9. Lift the hinge pins (2) away from the retaining clips (3).

10. Slide both hinge pins (2) towards the passenger side of the vehicle and remove.
11. Carefully lower the tonneau cover down to its closed position.

Note: Take care in strong winds.

12. Remove the cover from the vehicle and store in an upright position on its hinges to avoid damage.
13. Remove the gas struts from the lower ball pins by repeating Step 7.

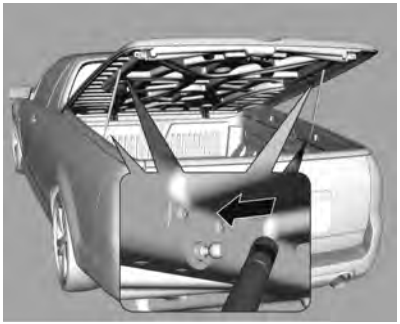
Note: Store the gas struts and hinge pins in a secure location with the tonneau cover.

Refitting of the hard tonneau:

Two people are required to lift and fit the tonneau cover onto the vehicle.

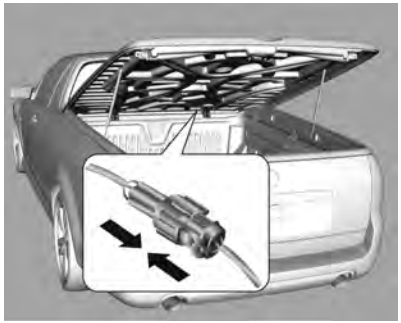
1. Fit the tonneau cover (1) and secure with the hinge pins (2) into the retaining clips (3).

   Ensure the hinge pins click into position.



2. Attach the gas struts by clipping into place.

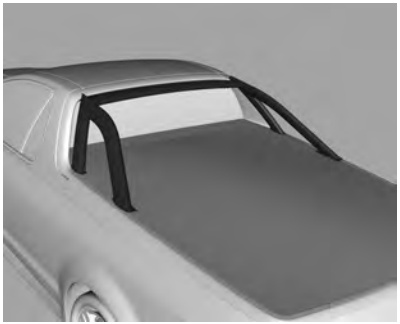
   Ensure the narrow end mounts to the vehicle.



3. Join the two wiring connectors located toward the front of the vehicle.

Note: Ensure that the light turns on when the tonneau cover is open and turns off when the tonneau cover is closed.

Sports bar



The vehicle may have a Genuine Holden Accessory sports bar.

The sports bar is an appearance item only. It does not provide additional protection in an accident and should not be used as a tie down point for loads.

Information on Loading the Vehicle

Heavy Accessories

- Place heavy objects in the rear load area as far forward as possible against the rear bulkhead.
- Place heavier objects at the bottom.
- Secure all objects in the load area to prevent movement.
- Do not place objects in front of the rear window or on the dashboard above the instrument panel.
- Do not place objects in the area where the airbags inflate.

Carrying portable gas cylinders in vehicles

⚠ Warning

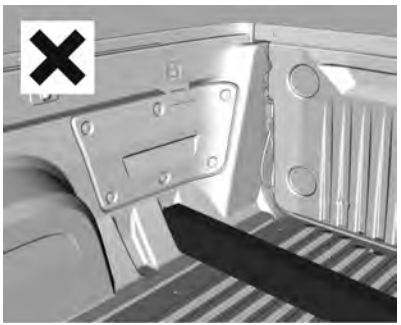
Gas cylinders can leak, creating a risk of fire or explosion. As a precaution, ensure adequate ventilation when carrying gas cylinders. They must be restrained from rolling around, and where possible, placed in the load area of the vehicle.

It is recommended that if gas cylinders are frequently transported, that a purpose-built carrying compartment be used. Ensure any transportation of gas cylinders complies with the applicable regulations.

Securing cargo

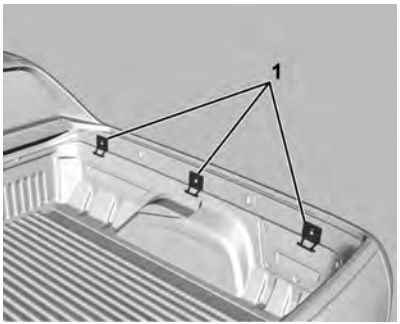
⚠ Warning

Do not operate the vehicle with the tailgate in the open position as cargo may fall from the load area and the number plate will be obscured from view.



Do not use the moulded ribs in the rear load area to secure cargo.

Tie points



Use the six tie points (1) to secure cargo (three on either side of the load area).

Instruments and Controls

Instrument Panel Overview

Instrument Panel Overview 5-3

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment ... 5-5
Steering Wheel Controls 5-5
Horn 5-6
Windscreen Wiper/Washer 5-7
Clock 5-8
Power Outlets 5-8

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 5-10
Instrument Cluster 5-12
Speedometer 5-12
Odometer 5-12
Trip Odometer 5-12
Tachometer 5-12
Fuel Gauge 5-12
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 5-13
Seat Belt Reminders 5-13
Airbag Readiness Light 5-14
Charging System Light 5-14
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 5-14
Service Vehicle Soon Light 5-15
Brake System Warning Light 5-15
Electric Parking Brake Light 5-16
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 5-16
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light 5-17
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) Warning Light 5-17
Traction Off Light 5-17
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light 5-18
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/ Warning Light 5-18
Engine Oil Pressure Light 5-18
Low Fuel Warning Light 5-19
Security Light 5-19
High-Beam On Light 5-19
Front Fog Lamp Light 5-19
Lamps On Reminder 5-19
Cruise Control Light 5-19
Door open warning light 5-19

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC) 5-20
Head-Up Display (HUD) 5-22

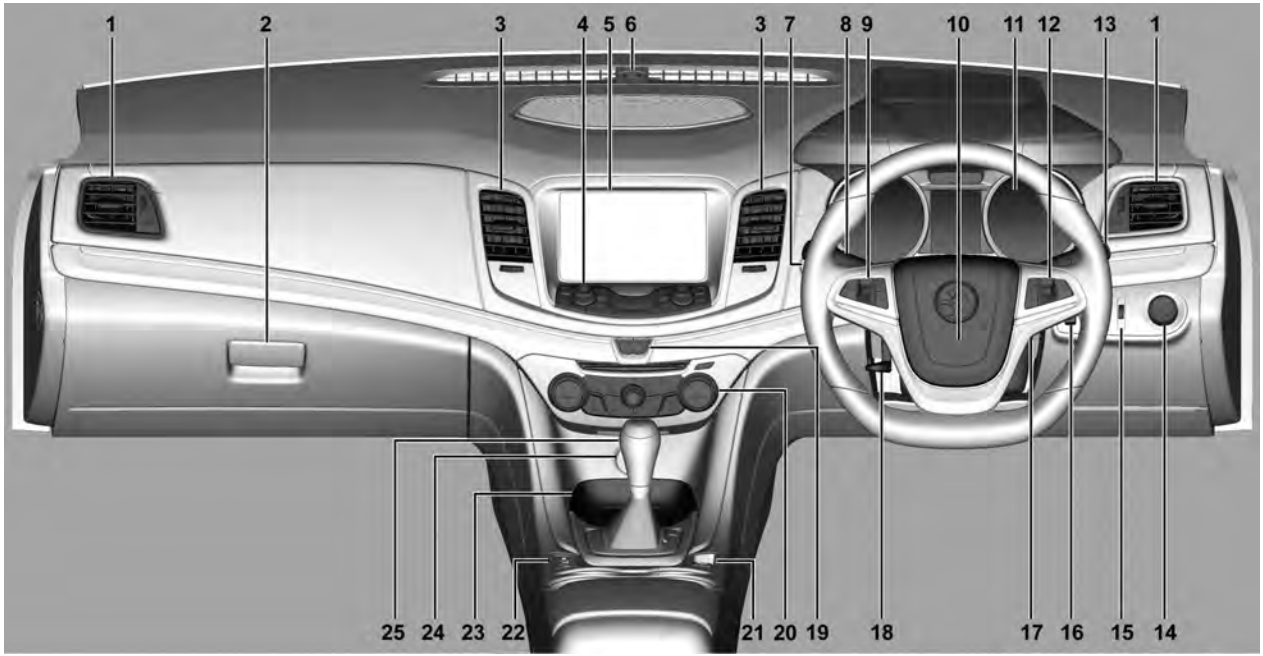
Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages 5-24
Battery Voltage and Charging Messages 5-24
Brake System Messages 5-25
Cruise Control Messages 5-25
Door open messages 5-25
Engine Cooling System Messages 5-26
Engine Oil Messages 5-26
Engine Power Messages 5-26
Fuel System Messages 5-27
Key and Lock Messages 5-27
Lamp Messages 5-27
Object Detection System Messages 5-28
Ride Control System Messages 5-28
Security Messages 5-28
Service Vehicle Messages ... 5-28

Starting the Vehicle Messages 5-29
Transmission Messages 5-29
Vehicle Reminder Messages 5-29
Washer Fluid Messages 5-30
Window Messages 5-30

Vehicle Personalisation
Vehicle Personalisation 5-30

Instrument Panel Overview



1. Vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents on page 8-6*.
2. *Glove Box on page 4-1*.
3. Vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents on page 8-6*.
4. Infotainment system controls. See *Overview on page 7-3*.
5. Infotainment screen. See *Overview on page 7-3*.
6. Sunlight sensor. See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-1*.
7. Engine Start/Stop button. See *Ignition Positions on page 9-4*
8. *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-7*.
9. Steering wheel controls. See *Cruise Control on page 9-21*.
10. *Horn on page 5-6*.
11. *Instrument Cluster on page 5-12*.
12. *Steering Wheel Controls on page 7-7*.
13. Lever for:

    Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-3.

    Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 6-1.

    Driver Information Centre (DIC) under *Instrument Panel Overview on page 5-3*.
14. *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.
15. Instrument panel illumination switch. See *Interior Lighting on page 1-8*.
16. Head-up display controls. See *Head-Up Display (HUD) on page 5-22*.
17. Ignition lock/switch (behind steering wheel). See *Ignition Positions on page 9-4*.
18. *Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 5-5*.
19. *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-3*.
20. Climate control switches. See *Air Conditioning System on page 8-1*.
21. *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-15*.
22. Electronic stability control switch. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-18*. Park Assist switches. See *Parking Assist on page 9-25*.
23. *Front Storage on page 4-2*.
24. 12 volt power socket. See *Power Outlets on page 5-8*.
25. Shift lever. See *Transmission Display on page 9-8*.

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment

⚠ Warning

Do not attempt to adjust the steering wheel while driving.

1. To unlock, move the lever down.
2. To adjust, move the steering wheel up, down, closer or away.
3. To lock, move the lever up. Ensure the steering wheel is locked in position before driving.

Steering Wheel Controls

The vehicle may have Forward collision alert and Lane departure warning.

/ (Push to Talk): Press to interact with Bluetooth® or navigation systems.

/ (End Call/Mute): Press to silence the vehicle speakers only. Press again to turn the sound on. Press to reject an incoming call, or to end a current call.

△ SRC ▽ (Rotary Control): Turn △ or ▽ to select preset radio stations.

Turn △ or ▽ to select the next or previous favourite radio station, CD track, DVD track/chapter, or MP3 track.

Press SRC to change between audio sources.

+ ▷ − (Volume): Press + to increase the volume; press − to decrease the volume.

(Forward collision alert): Press the button to set the alert timing to far, medium, near or off. The button press shows the current control setting on the HUD. Additional button presses will change this setting. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System on page 9-23*.

(Lane departure warning): Press the lane departure warning button to turn on lane departure warning. A green indicator will notify that the system is operational. See *Lane Departure Warning (LDW) on page 9-33*.

RES/+ (Resume/Accel): Move the thumbwheel up to resume to a previously set speed or to accelerate.

SET/− (Set/Coast): Move the thumbwheel down to set a speed and activate cruise control or to make the vehicle decelerate.

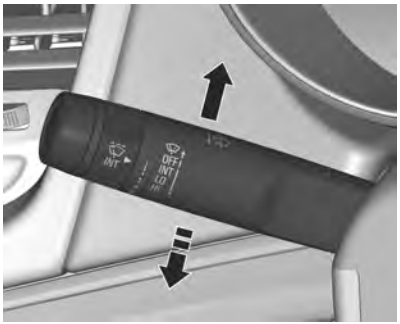
(On/Off): Press to turn the cruise control system on and off. An indicator light will turn on or off in the instrument cluster.

(Cancel): Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Horn

Press .

Windscreen Wiper/ Washer



The wipers/washers operate with the ignition in the ON or ACCESSORIES positions.

> **⚠ Caution**
>
> Never operate the wipers on dry glass, as this will damage the rubber and scratch the glass.

: Wipers cycle while the lever is held down.

OFF: Off

INT: Intermittent wipe

LO: Slow

HI: Fast

: Pull to wash the windscreen. The wipers will also cycle for a short time.

Intermittent wipers

Rotate collar down for more frequent wipes, up for less frequent wipes.

Note: The intermittent wiper frequency is increased as vehicle speed increases.

Rain sensing

The vehicle may have rain sensing windscreen wipers.

A sensor near the top centre of the windscreen detects the amount of water on the windscreen and controls the frequency of the windscreen wipers. Keep this area clear of debris for best system performance.

> **⚠ Caution**
>
> Switch off the rain sensor by setting the lever to the **OFF** position before entering a car wash.
>
> Replace the wiper blades as soon as they do not completely remove water from the windscreen. If the
>
> (Continued)

Caution (Continued)

blades are not replaced, the wipers may continue to wipe even though most of the screen is dry.

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, make sure that the windscreen is fully defrosted before switching on the rain sensor.

INT: The wipers cycle when water is detected on the windscreen.

The wiper speed and frequency are adjusted automatically.

To manually adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensing:

- Rotate the collar down for higher sensitivity.
- Rotate the collar up for less sensitivity.

Clock

To set the time and date, refer to "Time and Date" under *Settings on page 7-64*.

Power Outlets

⚠ Warning

It is dangerous for the driver of a vehicle to attach or remove accessories from the power socket while driving. It may distract the driver's attention,

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

putting the occupants of the vehicle and other road users at risk.

Note: Any device connected to a power socket must not exceed a current draw of 10 amps.

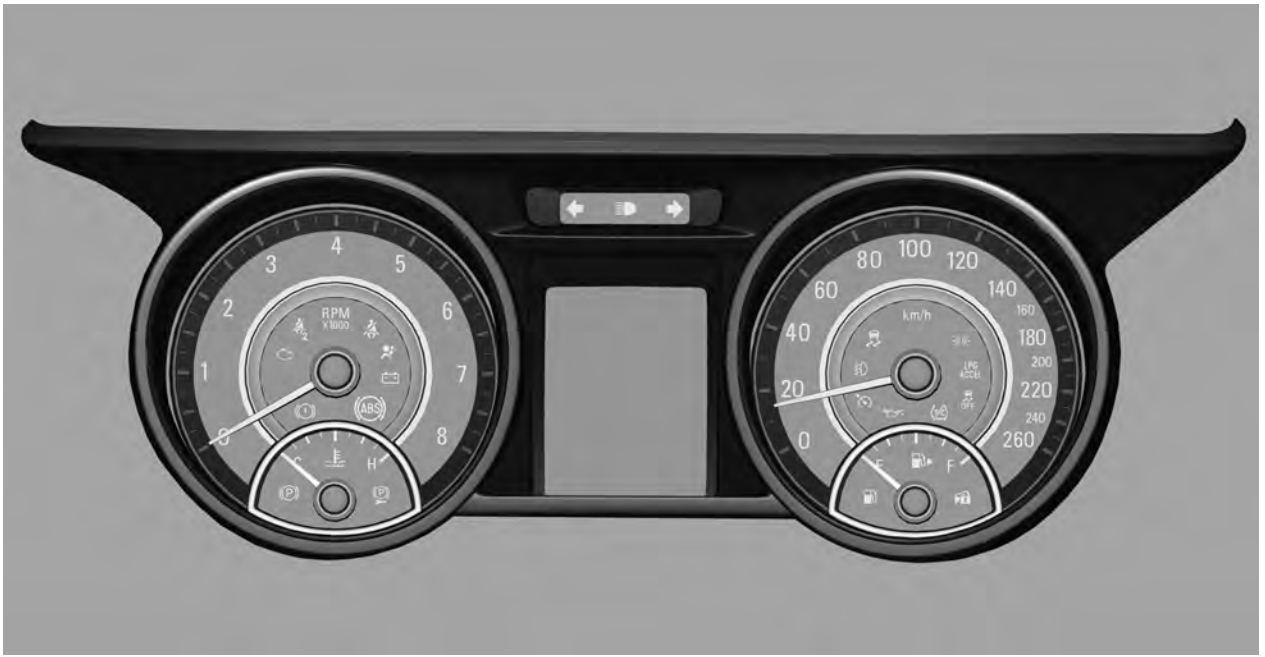
The power socket operates with the ignition in the ON or the ACCESSORIES positions.

Console power socket

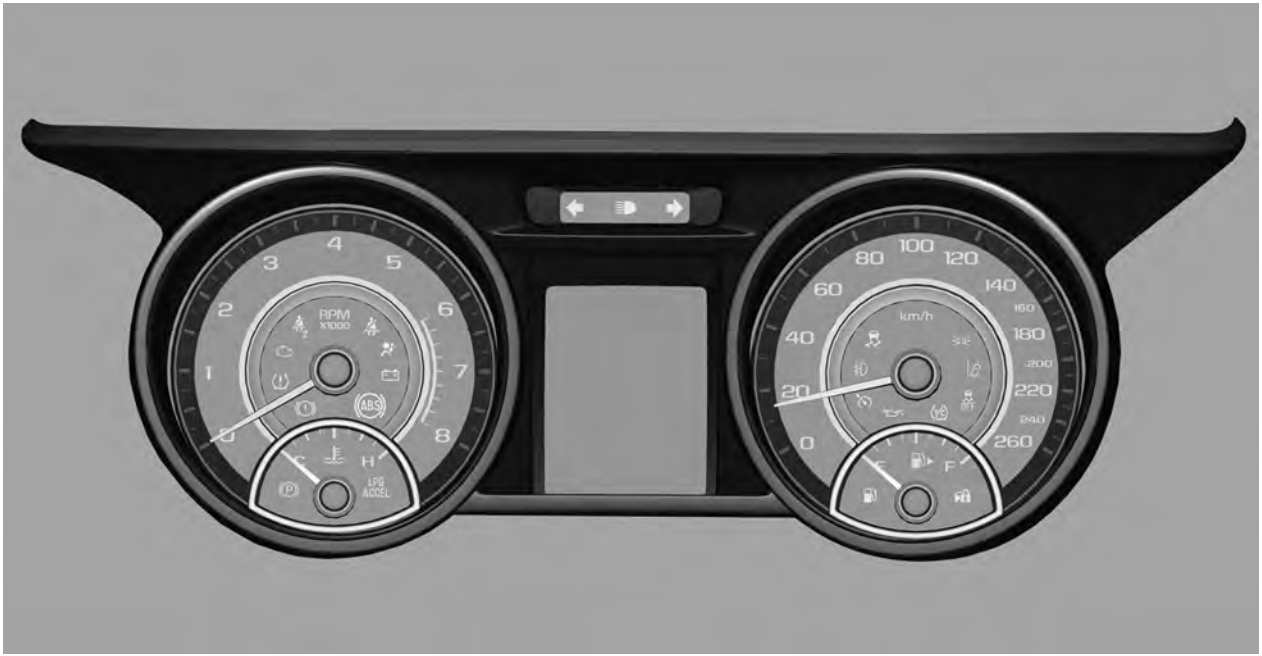
A power socket is located in front of the shift lever and inside the centre console.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

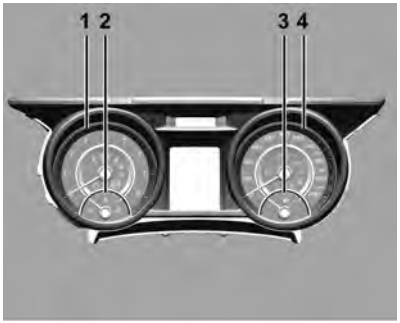
Evoke, SV6, SS



SSV



Instrument Cluster



1. Tachometer.
2. Engine coolant temperature gauge.
3. Fuel gauge.
4. Speedometer.

Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in kilometres per hour (km/h).

Odometer

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven in kilometres.

Trip Odometer

The trip odometer can show how far the vehicle has been driven since the trip odometer was last reset.

The trip odometer is accessed and reset through the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-20*.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

Fuel Gauge

When the ignition is on, the fuel gauge shows how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. When the indicator nears empty, a message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) displays. See *Fuel System Messages on page 5-27*. An arrow on the fuel gauge indicates the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

Note: Large additions of fuel will change the gauge reading quickly. It may take up to 10 minutes to register small additions or if the key

is not removed during refuelling. This prevents false readings due to fuel movement when cornering.
If the vehicle is idling on a gradient for an extended period, the gauge may change, but will correct itself once moving again. This may take up to 10 minutes.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

This gauge shows the engine coolant temperature when the ignition is on.

If the indicator needle moves all the way to **H** (hot), the engine is too hot.

If the vehicle has been operated under normal driving conditions, pull off the road, stop the vehicle, and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-10*.

The gauge reading can move towards the **H** (hot) under the following conditions:

- Stop-start driving
- High speed driving in warm weather
- Hill climbing
- Towing

This is normal.

Seat Belt Reminders

Driver Seat Belt Reminder Light

There is a driver seat belt reminder light on the instrument cluster.

When the vehicle is started light flashes to remind drivers to fasten their seat belt. Then the light stays on until the belt is buckled.

A chime sounds when the seat belt is unbuckled and vehicle speed is above 22 km/h.

This cycle may continue several times if the driver remains or becomes unbuckled during driving while the vehicle is moving.

If the driver seat belt is already buckled, neither the light nor chime comes on.

Passenger Seat Belt Reminder Light

When the vehicle is started light flashes to remind the front passenger to fasten their seat belt. Then the light stays on until the belt is buckled.

A chime sounds when the seat belt is unbuckled and vehicle speed is above 22 km/h.

This cycle may continue several times if the passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the passenger seat belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger seat belt reminder light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the reminder light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the seat belt.

Airbag Readiness Light

This light shows if there is an electrical problem with the airbag system. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System on page 3-7*.

The airbag readiness light comes on for several seconds when the vehicle is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

Charging System Light

This light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show it is working.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

The light should go out once the engine starts. If it stays on, or comes on while driving, there could be a problem with the charging system.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

This light comes on when the ignition is turned on, as a check to show it is working. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on and stays on while the engine is running, this indicates that there is a problem and service is required.

⚠ Caution

If the vehicle is continually driven with this light on, the emission controls might not work as well, the vehicle fuel economy might

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This may lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of the vehicle can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

This light comes on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

Light Flashing: A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and could damage the emission control system on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

To prevent more serious damage to the vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard accelerations.
- Avoid steep uphill gradients.
- If the vehicle is towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, stop the vehicle. Find a safe place to park. Turn the vehicle off, wait at least 10 seconds, and restart the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Light On: An emission control system malfunction has been detected on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

The light remains on until the problem is repaired. Contact your dealer.

Service Vehicle Soon Light

If the light comes on, a condition exists that may require the vehicle to be taken in for service.

If the light comes on, take the vehicle to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Brake System Warning Light

The brake system warning light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

The warning light comes on to indicate there is a brake problem.

⚠ Warning

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

If the warning light (!) comes on while driving, a chime sounds. Pull off the road and stop. The pedal might be harder to push or go closer to the floor. It might also take longer to stop.

- Check the brake fluid level. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-4*.
- Do not proceed until satisfied that braking is possible or that the cause of the problem has been repaired.
- If necessary, contact your dealer.

Electric Parking Brake Light

This light (P) should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) status light (P) comes on when the EPB is applied. If the light continues flashing after the parking brake is released, or while driving, there is a problem with the electric parking brake system. A SERVICE PARKING BRAKE message may also display in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Brake System Messages on page 5-25* for more information.

If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, see your dealer.

The parking brake warning light (P) should come on briefly when the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If this light comes on, there is a problem with a system on the vehicle that is causing the parking brake system to work at a reduced level. The vehicle can still be driven, but should be taken to a dealer as soon as possible. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-15* for more information.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

The Antilock Brake System (ABS) light (ABS) comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then goes off.

If the ABS light stays on, turn the ignition off. If the light comes on while driving, stop as soon as it is safely possible and turn the ignition off. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the ABS light stays on, or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service. Contact a dealer.

If the regular brake system warning light is not on, the vehicle still has brakes, but not antilock brakes.
If the regular brake system warning light is also on, the vehicle does not have antilock brakes and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-15*.

See *Brake System Messages on page 5-25* for all brake-related DIC messages.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light

The vehicle may have LDW.

This light briefly comes on amber while starting the vehicle. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the light then turns off.

This light comes on green when the system is on and ready to operate. When the system determines that the vehicle is leaving its lane without using the turn signal, this light will change to amber and flash.

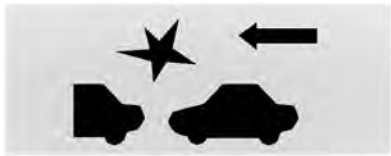
See *Lane Departure Warning (LDW) on page 9-33*.

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) Warning Light

The vehicle may have FCA.

The FCA warning lights are displayed in the Head-Up Display (HUD).

The vehicle ahead light comes on green when a vehicle is detected ahead. It changes to amber when following another vehicle too closely.



The forward collision alert comes on and warns when a vehicle is being rapidly approached.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System on page 9-23* for more information.

Traction Off Light

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then goes off.

This light comes on when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off by pressing the OFF button.

This light also comes on and the system turns off if there is a problem with the TCS.

If the light comes on and stays on for an extended period of time while the system is turned on, contact a Holden dealer.

See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-17*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then goes off.

If the light comes on and stays on while driving, there could be a problem with the ESC and the vehicle might need service. When this warning light is on, the ESC is off and does not limit wheel spin.

The light flashes if the system is active and is working to assist the driver with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions.

See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-18* for more information.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then goes off.

This light comes on when the ESC system is turned off. When the ESC is off, the TCS is also off, and wheel spin is not limited. If the ESC is off, the system does not assist in controlling the vehicle. Turn on the TCS and the ESC, and the warning light turns off.

This light also comes on in Competitive Driving Mode (Redline).

See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-18*, *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-17* and *Competitive Driving Mode (Redline) on page 9-20*.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

⚠ Caution

Engine damage may result if you keep driving. Do not run the engine. If the oil level is normal, have the system checked by your dealer.

The oil pressure light illuminates red when the ignition is switched on and goes out shortly after the engine starts.

If the light illuminates when the engine is running:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

- Turn the ignition off.
- Check the engine oil level. See *Engine Oil on page 10-6*.
- Contact your dealer.
- remains illuminated until the problem is repaired.

Low Fuel Warning Light

This light comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel and flashes when very low on fuel. The low fuel light remains on until the fuel tank is filled above the low fuel level. If it does not, have your vehicle serviced.

Note: On some vehicle variants the light may be replaced by a graphic in the DIC.

Security Light

The security light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light stays on and the engine does not start, there could be a problem with the theft-deterrent system. Contact your dealer.

High-Beam On Light

The high-beam on light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 6-1* for more information.

Front Fog Lamp Light

The fog lamp light comes on when the fog lamps are in use.

The light goes out when the fog lamps are turned off. See *Fog Lamps on page 6-4* for more information.

Lamps On Reminder

This light comes on when the exterior lamps are in use. See *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.

Cruise Control Light

The cruise control light comes on whenever the cruise control is set.

The light goes out when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control on page 9-21* for more information.

Door open warning light

This light comes on when a door is open or not securely latched.

Before driving, check that all doors are properly closed.

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC)

The Driver Information Centre (DIC) displays information about the vehicle. It also displays warning messages if a system problem is detected. See *Vehicle Messages on page 5-24*. All messages appear in the DIC display in the centre of the instrument cluster.

The vehicle may also have features that can be customised through the controls on the radio. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-30*.

DIC Operation and Displays

The DIC has different displays, which can be accessed by using the DIC buttons on the turn signal lever to the right of the steering wheel. The DIC displays trip, fuel, vehicle system information, and warning messages if a system problem is detected.

DIC Buttons

1. **SET/CLR:** Press to set or clear the menu item displayed.
2. ▵▿ **:** Use to scroll through the menus.
3. **MENU:** Press to display the Trip/Fuel menu and the Vehicle Information menu. This button is also used to return to or exit the last screen displayed on the DIC.

Trip/Fuel Menu Items

Press MENU on the turn signal lever until Trip/Fuel Menu is displayed. Use ▵▿ to scroll through the following menu items which may include:

- Digital Speedometer
- Trip
- Fuel Range
- Average Fuel Consumption
- Instantaneous Fuel Consumption
- Average Vehicle Speed
- Fuel Used
- Navigation (if fitted)

Digital Speedometer

The speedometer, available on some vehicles, shows how fast the vehicle is moving in kilometres per hour (km/h). The speedometer cannot be reset.

Trip

This display shows the current distance travelled in kilometres (km), since the last reset for the trip odometer. The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing SET/CLR while the trip odometer display is showing.

Fuel Range

This display shows the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. Fuel range cannot be reset.

Average Fuel Consumption

This display shows the approximate average litres per 100 kilometres (L/100 km). This number is calculated based on the number of L/100 km recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. The fuel economy can be reset by pressing SET/CLR while the Average Fuel Economy display is showing. On some models, this display is shown on the same page with the instantaneous fuel consumption display.

Instantaneous Fuel Consumption

The instantaneous fuel consumption display shows the current fuel economy in litres per 100 kilometres (L/100 km). This number reflects only the fuel economy that the vehicle has right now and changes frequently as driving conditions change. Unlike average fuel consumption, this display cannot be reset. On some models, this display is shown on the same page with the average fuel consumption display.

Average Vehicle Speed

This display shows the average speed of the vehicle in kilometres per hour (km/h). This average is calculated based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset of this value. The average speed can be reset by pressing SET/CLR while the Average Vehicle Speed display is showing.

Fuel Used

On vehicles with a fuel used display, this shows the fuel used in litres (L), since the last reset. The fuel used can be reset by pressing SET/CLR while the Fuel Used display is showing.

Navigation

On vehicles with a Navigation system, this display shows the Navigation information when guidance is selected.

Vehicle Information Menu Items

Press MENU on the turn signal lever until Vehicle Information menu is displayed. Use ⇕ to scroll through the following possible menu items:

- Battery Voltage
- Speed Warning

Battery Voltage

This display shows the current battery voltage. If the voltage is in the normal range, the value will display. For example, the display may read Battery Voltage 15.0 Volts. The vehicle's charging system regulates voltage based on the state of the battery. The battery voltage can fluctuate while viewing this information on the DIC. This is normal. See *Charging System Light on page 5-14* for more information. If there is a problem with the battery charging system, the DIC will display a message.

Speed Warning

This display is used to set the vehicle speed at which the speed warning chime sounds and the alert is displayed. The speed can be set by pressing SET/CLR while the speed warning display is showing.

ECO Menu Items

Press MENU on the turn signal lever until ECO Menu is displayed. Use ⏶⏷ to scroll through to the Average Fuel Economy display and the Economy Trend Statistics display.

The average fuel economy can be displayed over the past 25, 100 and 500 km.

Press SET/CLR to select the distance.

The Economy Trend Statistic display shows the fuel economy for the last 50 km. Each bar in the graph represents 5 km.

Head-Up Display (HUD)

⚠ Warning

If the HUD image is too bright, or too high in your field of view, it may take you more time to see

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

things you need to see when it is dark outside. Be sure to keep the HUD image dim and placed low in your field of view.

For vehicles with HUD, some information concerning the operation of the vehicle is projected onto the windscreen.

The HUD information appears as an image focused out toward the front of the vehicle.

The HUD may display the following alerts and information for vehicles equipped with these features:

- Speedometer
- Tachometer
- Turn Signal Indicators
- High-Beam Indicator Symbol
- Forward Collision Alert Warnings
- Audio Functions

- Navigation (if fitted)
- PRNDL (shift lever position)
- Posted Speed Limit
- Lateral G Gauge
- Shift Up Meter
- Cruise Control Active

The HUD control is to the right side of the steering wheel.

To adjust the HUD image so that items are properly displayed:

1. Adjust the driver seat to a comfortable position.
2. Start the engine.
3. Adjust the HUD controls.

Use the following settings to adjust the HUD:

HUD **:** Press down or up to centre the HUD image. The HUD image can only be adjusted up and down, not side to side.

PAGE : Push to change the displayed page.

- Rotate clockwise to increase the brightness of the display.
- Rotate anticlockwise to decrease the brightness of the display.
- Rotate fully anticlockwise to turn the display off.

There are four HUD pages that can be viewed in the HUD display.

Page one displays:

Page two displays:

Page three displays:

Page four displays:

The display at the top of page four shows the gear shift timing. This display will appear with an increase in engine RPM, towards the upper end of the engine RPM range.

The display at the bottom of page four indicates the lateral acceleration (G) to the left or right when cornering.

If You Cannot See the HUD Image When the Ignition Is On

- Is anything covering the HUD lens?
- Is the HUD dimmer setting bright enough?
- Is the HUD image adjusted to the proper height?
- Are you wearing polarized sunglasses?
- Is ambient light low in the direction the vehicle is facing?

If the HUD Image Is Not Clear

- Is the HUD image too bright?
- Are the windscreen and HUD lens clean?

Vehicle Messages

DIC messages display when the status of the vehicle has changed and action may be needed to correct the condition. Multiple messages appear one after another.

Press any of the DIC buttons on the turn signal lever to acknowledge and clear them from the display. More urgent messages cannot be cleared from the DIC display. All messages should be taken seriously. Clearing messages will not correct the problem.

Note: Messages displayed are dependent on vehicle variant. Not all messages may display.

Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

BATTERY SAVER ACTIVE

This message displays when the vehicle has detected that the battery voltage is dropping beyond a reasonable point. The battery saver

system starts reducing features of the vehicle that may be noticed. At the point that features are disabled, this message displays. Turn off unnecessary accessories to allow the battery to recharge.

LOW BATTERY

This message is displayed when the battery voltage is low.

SERVICE BATTERY CHARGING SYSTEM

This message is displayed when there is a fault in the battery charging system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

Brake System Messages

BRAKE FLUID LOW

This message is displayed when the brake fluid level is low. See *Brake Fluid on page 10-15*.

RELEASE PARKING BRAKE

This message is displayed if the electric parking brake is on while the vehicle is in motion. Release it before you attempt to drive. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-15* for more information.

SERVICE BRAKE ASSIST

This message may be displayed when there is a problem with the brake boost assist system. When this message is displayed, the brake boost assist motor might be heard operating and you might notice pulsation in the brake pedal. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

SERVICE PARKING BRAKE

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the electric parking brake. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-15* for more information. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

STEP ON BRAKE TO RELEASE PARK BRAKE

This message is displayed if you attempt to release the electric parking brake without the brake pedal applied. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-15* for more information.

Cruise Control Messages

CRUISE SET TO XXX

This message displays when the cruise control is set and shows the speed it was set to. See *Cruise Control on page 9-21*.

Door open messages

DRIVER DOOR OPEN

This message will display when the driver door is open. Close the door completely.

BONNET OPEN

This message will display when the bonnet is open. Close the bonnet completely.

PASSENGER DOOR OPEN

This message will display when the front passenger door is open. Close the door completely.

Engine Cooling System Messages

A/C OFF DUE TO HIGH ENGINE TEMP

This message displays when the engine coolant becomes hotter than the normal operating temperature. To avoid added strain on a hot engine, the air conditioning compressor automatically turns off. When the coolant temperature returns to normal, the air conditioning compressor turns back on. You can continue to drive the vehicle.

If this message continues to appear, have the system repaired by your dealer as soon as possible to avoid damage to the engine.

ENGINE OVERHEATED — IDLE ENGINE

This message displays when the engine coolant temperature is too hot. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down.

ENGINE OVERHEATED — STOP ENGINE

This message displays and a continuous chime sounds if the engine cooling system reaches unsafe temperatures for operation. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so to avoid severe damage. This message clears when the engine has cooled to a safe operating temperature.

Engine Oil Messages

CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON

This message displays when the next 15,000 km interval scheduled service is approaching. The reminder is reset when the vehicle is serviced. See the Service and Warranty Booklet for more information.

OIL PRESSURE LOW— STOP ENGINE

This message displays if low oil pressure levels occur. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and do not operate it until the cause of the low oil pressure has been corrected. Check the oil as soon as possible and have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

ENGINE OIL LOW— ADD OIL

This message displays if the engine oil level is low. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible. Check the engine oil level. See *Engine Oil on page 10-6*.

Engine Power Messages

ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED

This message displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed while this message is on, but maximum acceleration and speed may be reduced. Any time this

message stays on, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Fuel System Messages

FUEL LEVEL LOW

This message displays when the vehicle is low on fuel. Refuel as soon as possible.

Key and Lock Messages

NO REMOTE DETECTED

This message displays when the transmitter is not in the vehicle or the battery is weak, on vehicles with keyless access. See “Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-4*.

REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY

This message displays when the battery in the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter needs to be replaced. See “Battery Replacement” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-4*.

USE TRANSMITTER POCKET TO START

This message displays when the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter needs to be placed in the transmitter pocket. See “Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-4*.

Lamp Messages

AUTOMATIC LIGHT CONTROL ON

This message is displayed when the automatic light control has been turned on. See *Automatic Headlamp System on page 6-2*.

AUTOMATIC LIGHT CONTROL OFF

This message is displayed when the automatic light control has been turned off. See *Automatic Headlamp System on page 6-2*.

CHECK XXX LAMP

When a headlamp bulb or brake lamp bulb is out, this message displays to show which bulb needs to be replaced. See *Bulb Replacement on page 10-18*.

CHECK XXX INDICATOR LAMP

When one of the turn signals is out, this message displays to show which bulb needs to be replaced. See *Bulb Replacement on page 10-18*.

INDICATOR ON

This message is displayed if the turn signal has been left on. Turn off the turn signal.

Object Detection System Messages

PARK ASSIST OFF

This message displays when the park assist system has been turned off or when there is a temporary condition causing the system to be disabled. See *Parking Assist on page 9-25*.

SERVICE PARK ASSIST

This message displays if there is a problem with the Park Assist system. Do not use this system to help you park. See *Parking Assist on page 9-25*.

Ride Control System Messages

SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL

This message displays when there is a problem with the Traction Control System (TCS). When this message is displayed, the system will not limit wheel spin. Adjust your driving accordingly. See your dealer for service.

SERVICE ESP

This message displays if there is a problem with the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. If this message appears, try to reset the system. Stop; turn off the engine for at least 15 seconds; then start the engine again. If this message still comes on, it means there is a problem. See your dealer for service. The vehicle is safe to drive, however, you do not have the benefit of ESC, so reduce your speed and drive accordingly.

Security Messages

THEFT ATTEMPTED

This message displays if the vehicle detects a tamper condition.

Service Vehicle Messages

SERVICE AC SYSTEM

This message displays if there is a problem with the air conditioning system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

SERVICE POWER STEERING

This message displays if there is a problem with the power steering system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

SERVICE STEERING COLUMN LOCK

This message displays if there is a problem with the steering column lock system or the lock cannot be released. Try restarting the vehicle by following the procedure to release the steering lock. See “Engine Start/ Stop Button” under *Ignition Positions on page 9-4* for more information, or take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

SERVICE VEHICLE SOON

This message displays if there is a problem with the vehicle. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

STEERING COLUMN IS LOCKED

This message displays when the engine is running and the steering column is locked. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

Starting the Vehicle Messages

TURN STEERING WHEEL TURN KEY OFF THEN ON

This message displays when the steering column is locked. Try turning the steering wheel while turning the vehicle OFF and back ON, to unlock the steering column.

TURN STEERING WHEEL START VEHICLE AGAIN

This message displays when you try to start the vehicle, but the steering column remains locked.

Try restarting the vehicle by following the procedure to release the steering lock. See “Engine Start/Stop Button” under *Ignition Positions on page 9-4* for more information.

Transmission Messages

PRESS CLUTCH TO START

This message displays when attempting to start a vehicle with a manual transmission without pressing on the clutch pedal.

SERVICE TRANSMISSION

This message displays if there is a problem with the transmission. See your dealer.

SHIFT DENIED

This message displays when attempting to use the automatic transmission manual mode to shift to too low or too high of a gear. See “Active Select (A/S) mode” under *Shift Lever on page 9-9* for more information.

SHIFT TO PARK

This message displays when the transmission needs to be shifted to P (Park). This may appear when attempting to remove the key from the ignition or from the vehicle if the vehicle is not in P (Park).

TRANSMISSION HOT — IDLE ENGINE

This message displays and a chime sounds if the transmission fluid in the vehicle gets hot. Driving with the transmission fluid temperature high can cause damage to the vehicle. Stop the vehicle and let it idle to allow the transmission to cool. This message clears when the fluid temperature reaches a safe level.

Vehicle Reminder Messages

ICE POSSIBLE DRIVE WITH CARE

This message displays when ice conditions are possible.

Washer Fluid Messages

WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID

This message may display when the washer fluid level is low. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-15*.

Window Messages

OPEN, THEN CLOSE DRIVER/ PASSENGER WINDOW

This message is displayed when the window needs to be reprogrammed. If the vehicle's battery has been recharged or disconnected, you will need to reprogram each front window for the express-up feature to work. See *Power Windows on page 2-16*.

Vehicle Personalisation

The infotainment system controls are used to access the personalisation menus for customising vehicle features.

CONFIG (Configuration): Press to access the Configuration Settings menu.

HOME: Press to display the Home screen on vehicles with Navigation then touch Config to access the Configuration Settings menu.

TUNE/MENU: Press the centre of this switch to enter the menus and select menu items. Turn the switch to scroll through the menus.

⇦ **BACK:** Press to exit or move backward in a menu.

Entering the Personalisation Menus

1. Press CONFIG to access the Configuration Settings menu or on vehicles with Navigation, press HOME then touch Config screen button.
2. Turn the TUNE/MENU switch to highlight Vehicle Settings.
3. Press the centre of the TUNE/ MENU switch to select the Vehicle Settings menu. The ignition must be in the ON position.

The following list of menu items may be available:

- Climate and Air Quality
- Comfort and Convenience
- Collision Detection Systems
- Lighting
- Power Door Locks
- Remote Lock/Unlock/Start
- Return to Factory Settings?

Turn the TUNE/MENU switch to highlight the menu. Press the TUNE/MENU switch to select it. Each of the menus is detailed in the following information. Alternatively, the touch screen may be used to select.

Climate and Air Quality

Selecting the Climate and Air Quality menu may display the following:

- Auto Fan Speed

Auto Fan Speed

This will allow you to select the automatic fan speed. This feature sets the climate control fan speed to maintain the interior temperature.

Press the TUNE/MENU switch when Auto Fan Speed is highlighted to open the menu. Turn the switch to highlight High, Medium, or Low. Press ⇦ BACK to confirm the selection and move back to the last menu.

Comfort and Convenience

Selecting the Comfort and Convenience menu may display the following options:

- Chime Volume
- Button Chime
- Personalisation by Driver

Chime Volume

This allows the selection of the chime volume level.

Press the TUNE/MENU switch when Chime Volume is highlighted. Turn the switch to select Normal or High. Press ⇦ BACK to confirm and go back to the last menu.

Button Chime

This allows selection of feedback when touch screen buttons are pressed.

Personalisation by Driver

This allows the selection of the personalisation settings that are specific to each key or otherwise will remain the same, no matter which key was used to enter and start the vehicle.

Collision Detection Systems

Selecting the Collision Detection Systems menu may display the following options:

- Park Assist
- Side Blind Zone Alert

Park Assist

This allows the Park Assist feature, audible only, to be turned on or off and adjusted for when a tow bar is attached.

Press the TUNE/MENU switch when Park Assist is highlighted. Turn the switch to select Off, On or On with Tow Bar Attached. Press the TUNE/MENU switch to confirm and go back to the last menu.

Side Blind Zone Alert

This allows selection of whether the Side Blind Zone Alert is enabled or disabled.

Lighting

Select the Lighting menu and the following will be displayed:

- Vehicle Locator Lights
- Exit Lighting

Vehicle Locator Lights

This allows the vehicle locator lights to be turned on or off. When on, the indicators will flash when is pressed.

Press the TUNE/MENU switch when Vehicle Locator Lights is highlighted to open the menu. Turn the TUNE/MENU switch to highlight On or Off. Press TUNE/MENU to select On or Off. Press ⇦ BACK to confirm the selection and move back to the last menu.

Exit Lighting

This allows the selection of how long the exterior lamps stay on when leaving the vehicle when it is dark outside.

Press the TUNE/MENU switch when Exit Lighting is highlighted. Turn the switch to select Off, 30 Seconds, 1 Minute, or 2 Minutes. Press ⇦ BACK to confirm and go back to the last menu.

Power Door Locks

Selecting the Power Door Locks menu may display the following options:

- Auto Door Lock
- Auto Door Unlock

Auto Door Lock

This allows you to select if the doors are automatically locked when the vehicle is shifted from P (Park) or vehicle speed exceeds 12 km/h (manual transmission).

Auto Door Unlock

This allows selection of which of the doors will automatically unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

Press the TUNE/MENU switch when Auto Door Unlock is highlighted. Turn the switch to select All Doors, Driver Door, or Off. Press the TUNE/MENU switch to confirm and press BACK to go back to the last menu.

Press ⇦ BACK to return to the last menu.

When the vehicle is shifted into P (Park) the above setting also applies to which of the doors will automatically unlock.

Remote Lock/Unlock/Start

Selecting the Remote Lock, Unlock, Start menu may display the following options:

- Remote Unlock Feedback
- Remote Lock Feedback
- Remote Door Unlock
- Passive Door Unlock
- Passive Door Lock
- Remote Left in Veh. Reminder

Remote Unlock Feedback

This allows selection of what type of feedback is given when unlocking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

Press the TUNE/MENU switch when Remote Unlock Feedback is highlighted. Turn the switch to select Flash Lights or OFF. Press the TUNE/MENU switch to confirm and go back to the last menu.

Remote Lock Feedback

This allows selection of what type of feedback is given when locking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

Press the TUNE/MENU switch when Remote Lock Feedback is highlighted. Turn the switch to select Lights and Horn, Lights Only, Horn Only, or OFF. Press the TUNE/MENU switch to confirm and go back to the last menu.

Remote Door Unlock

This allows selection of which doors will unlock when pressing on the RKE transmitter.

Press the TUNE/MENU switch when Remote Door Unlock is highlighted. Turn the switch to select All Doors or Driver Door Only. When set to Driver Door Only, the driver door will unlock the first time is pressed and all doors will unlock when is pressed a second time. When set to All Doors, all of the doors will unlock at the first press of . Press the TUNE/MENU switch to confirm and go back to the last menu.

Passive Door Unlock (Keyless Access)

This allows selection of which doors are unlocked by pressing the button on the outside door handle.

Press the TUNE/MENU switch when Passive Door Unlock is highlighted. Turn the switch to select All Doors or Driver Door. Press the TUNE/MENU switch to confirm and go back to the last menu.

Passive Door Lock (Keyless Access)

This allows selection of whether the doors are locked 8 seconds after the key is removed from the vehicle and the doors are shut.

Press the TUNE/MENU switch when Passive Door Lock is highlighted to select On or Off. Press ⇦ BACK to return to the last menu.

Note: It may also be possible to select feedback (Lights Only or Lights and Horn).

Remote Left in Vehicle Reminder

When on, a horn chirp will sound if the doors are closed with the ignition off and at least one transmitter has not been removed from the vehicle.

Press TUNE/MENU when Remote Left in Veh. Reminder is highlighted. A ☑ indicates the feature is selected.

Return to Factory Settings?

Select Return to Factory Settings? to return all vehicle personalisation to the default settings. Turn the switch to select Yes or No. Press the TUNE/MENU switch to confirm and go back to the last menu.

Lighting

Exterior Lighting
Exterior Lamp Controls 6-1
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 6-1
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 6-2
Automatic Headlamp System 6-2
Hazard Warning Flashers 6-3
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 6-3
Fog Lamps 6-4

Interior Lighting
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 6-4
Dome Lamps 6-5
Reading Lamps 6-5
Glove Box Lamps 6-5

Lighting Features
Entry Lighting 6-6
Exit Lighting 6-6
Battery Power Protection 6-6

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls

⏻ **(Off):** Turns the headlamps and park lamps off. The switch returns to **AUTO** position.Turn to ⏻ again to re-enable automatic headlamps.

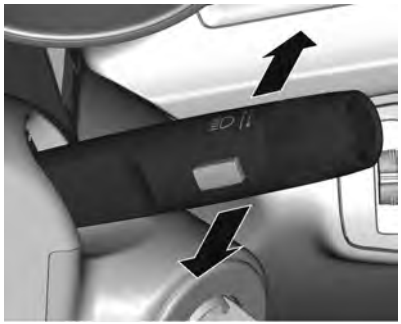
AUTO (Automatic headlamps): Headlamps and park lamps switch on and off automatically. Select high and low beam using the lever.

(Park lamps): Turns on the park, tail and rear number plate lamps.

(Headlamps): Turns on the headlamps and all park lamps.

(Fog lamps): Turns on the fog lamps (if equipped).

Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer



To activate high beam:

- With the headlamps on, push the lever toward the front of vehicle until it clicks, then release.
- The high beam indicator lamp illuminates on the instrument panel.

To return to low beam:

- Push the lever towards the front of the vehicle then release.

To flash the high beam lamps:

- Pull the lever toward the rear of the vehicle and release.
- The high beam lamps can be flashed even if the headlamps and/or ignition are off.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

The vehicle may have DRL.

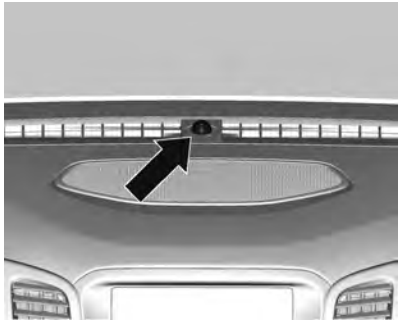
The DRL illuminate when the following occur:

- During daylight conditions.
- The engine is running.
- The fog lamps are off.

Note: If the lamp control switch is turned to or , the DRL will turn off. The DRL will turn on in night time conditions if the automatic headlamp system is turned off.

Automatic Headlamp System

When the exterior lamp control is set to AUTO and it is dark enough outside, the headlamps come on automatically.



There is a light sensor located on top of the instrument panel. Do not cover the sensor. Otherwise the headlamps will come on when they are not needed.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage or tunnel.

When it is bright enough outside, the headlamps will turn off.

The automatic headlamp system turns off when the exterior lamp control is turned to or the ignition is off.

The automatic headlamp system defaults to on with each ignition cycle.

⚠ Warning

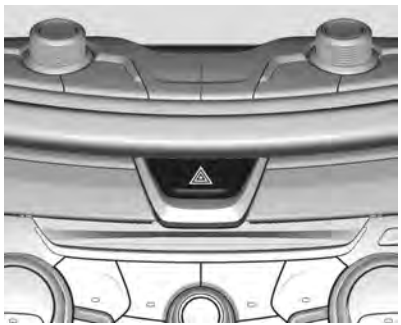
The automatic headlamp sensor cannot replace the driver's personal judgement of the prevailing light conditions. For example, the sensor is unable to detect foggy conditions.

In situations such as this, set the lamp switch to ≡D, otherwise your safety and that of other road users could be endangered.

Lights On with Wipers

If the windscreen wipers are activated in daylight with the engine on, and the exterior lamp control is in AUTO, the headlamps, park lamps, and other exterior lamps come on. The transition time for the lamps coming on varies based on wiper speed. When the wipers are not operating, these lamps turn off. Move the exterior lamp control to ⏻ or ≡00≡ to disable this feature.

Hazard Warning Flashers



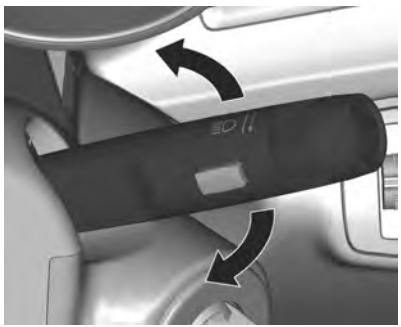
Press ⚠ to turn the hazard warning flasher on or off, when the ignition is in any position.

All turn signals flash continuously.

Use the hazard warning flasher if the vehicle becomes a traffic hazard, day or night.

Note: Using hazard warning flashers while the vehicle is moving, is illegal in some States and Countries.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



- Push the lever in the direction the steering wheel is turned.

- To signal a lane change, push the lever part way in the direction of the turn.

  The turn signals will flash three times (six times when a trailer is connected).
- To cancel the lane change function, push the lever in either direction.
- A green arrow on the instrument panel flashes when the lamps are in operation.

Fog Lamps

The vehicle may have fog lamps.

- In very heavy fog, vision may be improved by having the park lamps and fog lamps on and turning the headlamps off.
- Reduce speed when driving in fog.
- Check State laws regarding use of fog lamps when driving.
- Press to turn the fog lamps on.
- When the fog lamps are turned on, the fog lamp indicator illuminates on the instrument cluster.

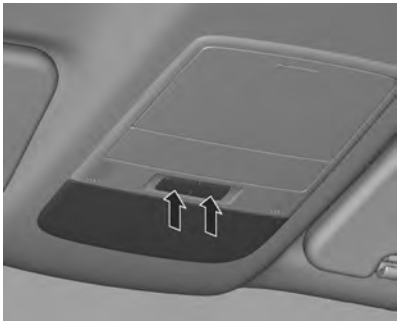
Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control

The instruments are illuminated when the ambient light sensor detects darkness.

To adjust the instrument lighting, rotate until the desired level is reached.

Dome Lamps



The interior lamp is located in the centre-front of the roof.

Two settings are available:

- **(On/off)**
- **(Door activated)**: The lamp automatically switches on when a door is opened, the vehicle is unlocked or the ignition is turned off.

  The lamp dims to off after the doors are closed.
- Switching the ignition on dims the lamp off immediately (unless a door remains open).
- When the interior lamp is set to door activated, it operates automatically only when it is dark.
- The lamp switches off approximately 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off. See *Battery Power Protection on page 6-6*.

Cabin storage area lamp

The vehicle may have a cabin storage area lamp, located behind the seats.

It illuminates when the dome lamp switches on.

Hard tonneau cover lamp

The vehicle may have a hard tonneau cover lamp. It illuminates when the hard tonneau cover is opened.

Reading Lamps

Front reading lamps

- The vehicle may have front reading lamps.
- Front reading lamps are located in the centre-front roof console.
- Press or to switch the lamp on or off.

Glove Box Lamps

The glove box lamp illuminates when the glove box is opened and switches off when closed.

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting

The headlamps, tail lamps, number plate lamps, reverse lamps, dome lamps and most of the interior lights turn on briefly when the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter button is pressed, or when the door handle is pulled on a keyless access vehicle. After about 30 seconds the exterior lamps turn off, then the dome lamps and remaining interior lights dim to off.

This feature can be changed. See “Exterior Lighting by Unlocking” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-30*.

Exit Lighting

Headlamps and tail lamps illuminate the way for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle.

Note: The automatic headlamp system must be on.

Activation, deactivation and duration of lighting of this function can be changed. See “Exterior Lighting by Unlocking” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-30*.

Battery Power Protection

To prevent the battery from discharging, the lamps for the glove box and reading lamps are switched off automatically approximately 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off.

Once the lamps have been deactivated, they are reactivated if either:

- The ignition is switched on
- The vehicle is unlocked

Infotainment System

Introduction
Introduction 7-1
Theft-Deterrent Feature 7-3
Overview 7-3
Steering Wheel Controls 7-7
Using the System 7-7
Operation 7-12

Radio
AM-FM Radio 7-15
Radio Data System (RDS) . . . 7-17
Radio Reception 7-17
Quick Info 7-18
Pandora Internet Radio 7-18
Stitcher Internet Radio 7-23

Audio Players
CD Player 7-27
MP3 7-29
USB 7-30
Auxiliary Devices 7-37
Bluetooth Audio 7-37

Navigation
Using the Navigation System 7-39
Maps 7-42
Navigation Symbols 7-43
Destination 7-45
Configure Menu 7-53
Global Positioning System (GPS) 7-57
Vehicle Positioning 7-57
Problems with Route Guidance 7-58
Map Data Updates 7-59
Database Coverage Explanations 7-59

Voice Recognition
Voice Recognition 7-59

Settings
Settings 7-64

Bluetooth Phone/Devices
Bluetooth 7-66
Text Messaging 7-73
Hands-Free Phone 7-75

Introduction

General information

Do the following before driving:

- Read the infotainment system section to become familiar with the functions.
- Become familiar with the hard keys on the faceplate and touch-sensitive screen buttons.
  - Press, refers to hardkeys.
  - Touch, refers to screen keys.
- Set up the audio by presetting favourite stations, setting the tone and adjusting the speaker settings.
- Set up the navigation features before driving, such as entering an address or a preset destination or delete information you may have entered using various options.

- The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logo are registered trademarks and are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.
- iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.
- Pandora® is a registered trademark of Pandora Media, Inc.
- Stitcher SmartRadio™ is a registered trademark of Stitcher, Inc.

About the system

- The system includes navigation and audio functions.
- Some features may be disabled while driving. These functions will be greyed-out.
- A greyed-out function indicates it is not available when the vehicle is moving.
- All functions are available when the vehicle is parked.

⚠ Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using the navigation system could cause a crash resulting in injury or death to yourself or others. Focus your attention on driving.

⚠ Warning

When driving the vehicle, be sure to keep the volume of the unit set low enough to hear sounds from outside the vehicle (e.g. road and traffic conditions).

⚠ Warning

Do not use a mobile phone when driving.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

⚠ Caution

Do not place beverages close to the audio system. The audio system mechanism may be damaged if they spill.

Do not strike or allow anything to impact the audio system as damage to the system mechanisms could occur.

Traffic Message Channel (TMC) feature

The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions (as updated from time to time) that apply to the use of the Traffic Message Channel (TMC).

To view the full terms and conditions relevant to the use of the service, refer to: www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

Appropriate use

The TMC is intended as an aid only, and does not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions.

The TMC service should not be relied upon for journeys that are time critical because, on occasions, you may experience delays even when using the TMC service.

Use of the TMC while driving

You must operate the TMC in accordance with all relevant road rules and laws. In particular you must only operate the TMC when the vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

Service continuity and reception

Reasonable endeavours will be made to provide the TMC, 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. However, the service may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. The provider of the TMC reserves the right to withdraw the service at any time.

Uninterrupted reception of the TMC cannot be assumed at any particular location.

Limitation of liability

Neither GM Holden nor the provider of the TMC will be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use the TMC.

No guarantee or any warranties are provided as to the availability, accuracy or completeness of the TMC, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to the TMC are excluded.

For operation, see “Traffic Settings” under *Configure Menu on page 7-53*.

Theft-Deterrent Feature

The infotainment system includes an electronically coded security system.

This electronically links the infotainment system to the vehicle.

Overview

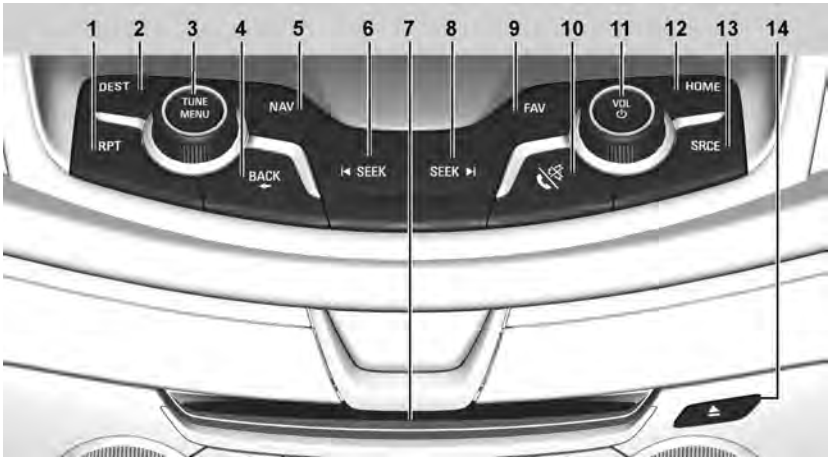
The infotainment system is controlled by using the buttons, touch screen, steering wheel controls and voice recognition.

See *Using the System on page 7-7*.

Radio without Navigation

1. Tone settings button
2. Favourites button
3. Tune/menu switch
4. Back button
5. Play/pause button
6. Seek previous/reverse button
7. Disc slot (CD)
8. Seek next/forward button
9. Configuration menu button
10. Phone/mute button
11. Volume/power switch
12. Home button
13. Source button
14. Eject button

Radio with Navigation



1. Repeat button
2. Destination button
3. Tune/menu switch
4. Back button
5. Navigation button
6. Seek previous/reverse button
7. Disc slot (CD)
8. Seek next/forward button
9. Favourites button
10. Phone/mute button
11. Volume/power switch
12. Home button
13. Source button
14. Eject button

Infotainment Control Buttons

The buttons on the faceplate are used to start primary functions while using the infotainment system.

The available buttons depend on the infotainment system fitted.

SRCE (Source): Press to change the audio source to AM, FM, CD, USB, AUX, or Bluetooth Audio.

HOME: Press to go to the Home Page. See “Home Page” in this section.

SEEK (Previous/Reverse):

- CD, USB, Bluetooth Audio: Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track.

- CD, USB, Bluetooth Audio: Press and hold to quickly reverse through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. See *CD Player on page 7-27*, *USB on page 7-30*, or *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-37*.
- AM, FM: Press to seek to the previous strong station.

DEST (Destination):

- Press to enter a destination.
- If a destination has already been entered, press to access the Route Menu. See *Destination on page 7-45*.

⏻ **VOL (Power/Volume):**

- Press to turn the system on and off.
- Turn to adjust the volume.

⏭ **SEEK (Next/Forward):**

- CD, USB, Bluetooth Audio: Press to seek the next track.
- CD, USB, Bluetooth Audio: Press and hold to fast forward through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. See *CD Player on page 7-27*, *USB on page 7-30*, or *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-37*.
- AM, FM: Press to seek to the previous strong station.

⏯ **(Play/Pause):** Press to pause or resume playback. See *CD Player on page 7-27*, *USB on page 7-30*, or *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-37*.

TONE: Press to access the Tone Settings menu screen to adjust Bass, Mid (Midrange), Treble, EQ, Fade, and Balance. Tone settings are specific to each source. See *AM-FM Radio on page 7-15*.

FAV (Favourites): Press to display the current favourite page number above the preset buttons. Keep pressing to scroll through the favourites pages. The stored stations for each list displays on the bottom of the screen. The number of preset Favourite Pages can be changed by pressing the Config button on the Home Page, then pressing Radio Settings, and then pressing Number of Favourite Pages.

NAV (Navigation):

- Press to view the vehicle's current position on the map screen.
- Continue pressing to cycle through the full map and split screens.

📞/🔇 **(Phone/Mute)**

- Press to enter the phone main screen. See *Bluetooth on page 7-66*, *Hands-Free Phone on page 7-75*.
- Press and hold to mute or unmute the infotainment system.

RPT (Repeat): Press to repeat the last voice guidance prompt.

⇦ **BACK:** Press to return to the previous screen in a menu.

TUNE/MENU Switch:

- Turn to change a radio station. See *AM-FM Radio on page 7-15*.
- Turn to highlight a feature within a menu. Press the centre of the TUNE/MENU switch to activate the highlighted feature.

CONFIG (Configuration Menu): Press to adjust features for Languages, Time and Date, Radio Settings, Phone Settings, Display Settings, and Vehicle Settings.

⏏ **(Eject):** Press to eject a disc from the infotainment system. See *CD Player on page 7-27*.

Touch screen buttons

Touch screen buttons are on the screen and highlighted when a feature is available. Some toggle screen buttons highlight when active and grey out when inactive.

Steering Wheel Controls

Some audio functions can be controlled through the steering wheel controls.

/ (Push to Talk): Press to interact with Bluetooth or voice recognition. See *Bluetooth on page 7-66* or *Voice Recognition on page 7-59*.

/ (Mute/End Call): Press to decline an incoming call, or to end a current call. Press to silence the vehicle speakers while using the infotainment system. Press again to turn the sound on. Press to cancel voice recognition.

△ **SRC** ▽ **(Thumbwheel Control):** Press to select an audio source.

Use the thumbwheel to select the next or previous favourite radio station, CD track, MP3 track, USB track, and Bluetooth Audio track.

Use △ SRC to skip to the next song or show using Pandora or Stitcher. See *Pandora Internet Radio on page 7-18* or *Stitcher Internet Radio on page 7-23*.

+ − (Volume): Press + to increase the volume. Press − to decrease.

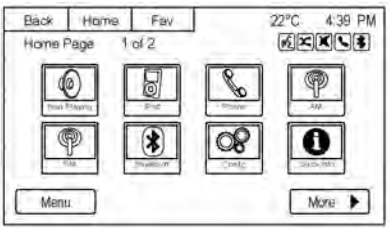
Using the System

The infotainment system is controlled by touching the screen, using the switches and pressing the buttons.

Voice recognition, activated through the steering wheel controls, can be used to control the infotainment features.

Press ✆ / 🎤 on the steering wheel controls to begin voice recognition. See *Voice Recognition on page 7-59*.

Home Page



The Home Page allows access to many of the features.

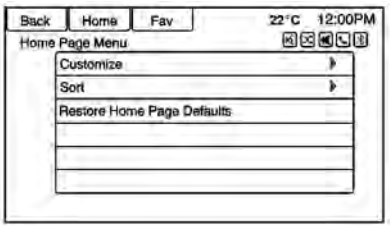
Back: Press/touch to return to the previous page.

Home: Press/touch to go back to the Home Page.

Fav: Press/touch to display a page of stored (favourite) AM or FM stations. Keep pressing Fav to scroll through the favourite pages.

More ▶ : Touch to go to the next page.

Home Page Customisation



The first Home Page can be customised.

To add screen buttons:

1. Touch Menu.
2. Select Customise.
3. Touch a screen button to add or remove it from the first Home Page. A ☑ indicates it will be displayed. The maximum number of buttons on Home Page 1 is eight.
4. Touch Done.

To move screen buttons:

1. Touch Menu.
2. Select Sort.
3. Touch to select an icon to move and swap with another icon on the first Home Page only.
4. Touch Done.

To restore Home Page 1 defaults:

1. Touch Menu.
2. Select Restore Home Page Defaults.
3. Touch Yes or Cancel.

Home Page Features

Touch screen buttons are highlighted when a feature is available, and greyed out when not available.

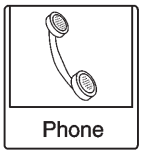
Various functions are disabled when the vehicle is moving.

Touch the Now Playing screen button to display the active source page. The sources available are AM, FM, CD, USB/iPod, Pandora, Stitcher, and AUX.

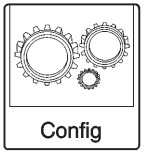
See *AM-FM Radio on page 7-15*, *CD Player on page 7-27*, *Pandora Internet Radio on page 7-18*, *Stitcher Internet Radio on page 7-23*, and *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-37*.

Touch the Navigation screen button to display a map of your current vehicle position. See *Using the Navigation System on page 7-39*, *Maps on page 7-42*, *Navigation Symbols on page 7-43*, and *Configure Menu on page 7-53*.

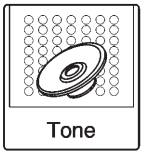
Touch the Destination screen button to display the Destination Entry home page or the Destination Menu. The available screen buttons provide easy access to a variety of ways to enter a destination. See *Destination on page 7-45*.



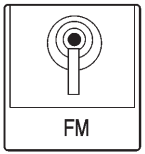
Touch the Phone screen button to display the Phone main page. See *Bluetooth on page 7-66* and *Hands-Free Phone on page 7-75*.



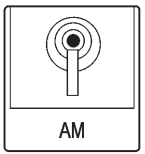
Touch the Config screen button to display the Config main page. From this display, adjust features such as time and date, radio, phone, navigation, vehicle, and display. See *Settings on page 7-64*. For navigation settings, see *Configure Menu on page 7-53*.



Touch the Tone screen button to display the Tone main page. Adjust the tone and speakers by pressing the screen buttons to change the levels of sound for treble, midrange, bass, fade, and balance. See *AM-FM Radio on page 7-15*.



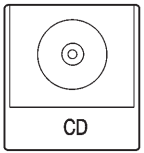
Touch the FM screen button to display the FM main page and play the current or last tuned FM station. See *AM-FM Radio on page 7-15*.



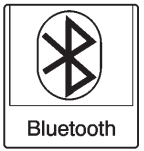
Touch the AM screen button to display the AM main page and play the current or last tuned AM station. See *AM-FM Radio on page 7-15*.

Touch the Pandora screen button to display the Pandora home page and streams personalised radio stations based on artists, songs, genres, and comedians. See *Pandora Internet Radio on page 7-18*.

Touch the Stitcher screen button to display the Stitcher home page and streams news, sports, and entertainment shows through the audio system. See *Stitcher Internet Radio on page 7-23*.

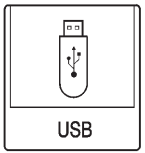


Touch the CD screen button to display the CD main page and play the current or last CD track selected. See *CD Player on page 7-27*.

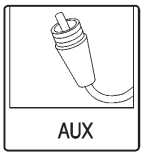


Touch the ⓑ Bluetooth screen button to display the Bluetooth Audio main page to play music through a Bluetooth device. See *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-37*.

Touch the iPod screen button to display the iPod main page and play the current or last track selected. See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-37*.



Touch the USB screen button to display the USB main page and play the current or last track selected. See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-37*.



Touch the AUX screen button to access any connected auxiliary device. See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-37*.

Touch the Messages screen button to display the Text Message Inbox. See *Text Messaging on page 7-73*.

Touch the Quick Info screen button to access available information on Audio playing. See *Quick Info on page 7-18*.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfibre cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfibre cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfibre cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfibre cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

⚠ Caution

Do not attach a device with a suction cup to the display. This may cause damage and may not be covered by the warranty.

Operation

Controls

The infotainment system is operated by using the buttons, switches, menus shown on the display and steering wheel controls.

Turning the System On or Off

⏻ **/VOL (Power/Volume):** Press to turn the system on and off.

Automatic Switch-Off

If the infotainment system has been turned on after the ignition is turned off, the system will turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

Volume Control

⏻ **/VOL (Power/Volume):** Rotate to adjust the volume.

✆ /🔇 **(Phone/Mute):** Press and hold to mute the infotainment system. Press ✆ / 🔇 again, or rotate the ⏻ /VOL switch to cancel mute.

Menu System

Controls

The TUNE/MENU switch and ⇦ BACK are used to navigate the menu system.

TUNE/MENU:

Press to:

- Enter the menu system.
- Select or activate the highlighted menu option.
- Confirm a set value.
- Turn a system setting on or off.

Rotate to:

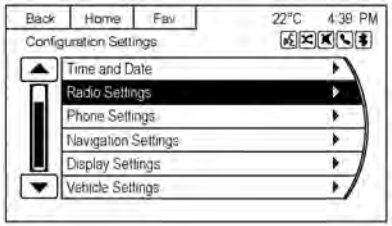
- Highlight a menu option.
- Select a value.

⇦ **BACK:**

Press to:

- Exit a menu.
- Return from a submenu screen to the previous menu screen.

Selecting a Menu Option

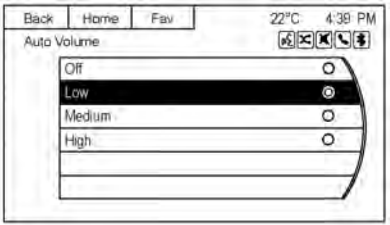


1. Rotate the TUNE/MENU switch to move the highlighted bar.
2. Press the TUNE/MENU switch to select the highlighted option.

Submenus

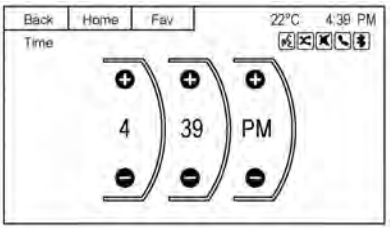
An arrow on the right-hand edge of the menu indicates that it has a submenu with other options.

Activating a Setting



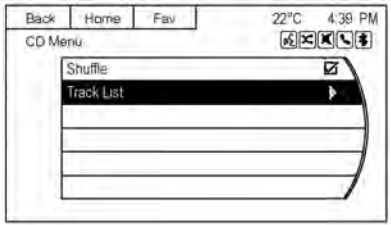
1. Rotate the TUNE/MENU switch to highlight the setting.
2. Press the TUNE/MENU switch to activate the setting.

Setting a Value



1. Rotate the TUNE/MENU switch to change the current value of the setting.
2. Press the TUNE/MENU switch to confirm the setting.

Turning a Function On or Off



1. Rotate the TUNE/MENU switch to highlight the function.
2. Press the TUNE/MENU switch to turn the function on or off.

Audio Settings

The audio settings can be set for each radio band and each audio player source.

Adjusting the Treble, Midrange, and Bass

1. Press the TONE button, or touch the Tone screen button.
2. Select Bass, Mid or Treble.
3. Select the value.

Press ⇦ BACK to go back to the Tone Settings menu.

Adjusting the Fader and Balance

1. Press the TONE button, or touch the Tone screen button.
2. Select Fade or Balance.
3. Select the value.

Press ⇦ BACK to go back to the Tone Settings menu.

Adjusting the EQ (Equaliser)

For vehicles that have an equaliser:

1. Press the TONE button, or touch the Tone screen button.
2. Select EQ presets.
3. Select the setting.

Press ⇦ BACK to go back to the Tone Settings menu.

System Settings

Configuring the Number of Favourite Pages

To configure the number of available favourite pages:

1. Press the CONFIG button, or touch the Config screen button.
2. Select Radio Settings.
3. Select Number of Favourite Pages.
4. Select the number of available favourite pages.
5. Press ⇦ BACK to go back to the Radio Settings menu.

Auto Volume

The auto volume feature automatically adjusts the radio volume to compensate for road and wind noise as the vehicle speeds up or slows down, so that the volume level is consistent.

The level of volume compensation can be selected, or the auto volume feature can be turned off.

1. Press the CONFIG button or touch the Config screen button.
2. Select Radio Settings.
3. Select Auto Volume.
4. Select the setting.
5. Press ⇦ BACK to go back to the Radio Settings menu.

Maximum Startup Volume

The maximum volume played when the radio is first turned on can be set.

1. Press the CONFIG button or touch the Config screen button.
2. Select Radio Settings.
3. Select Startup Volume.
4. Select the setting.
5. Press ⇦ BACK to go back to the Radio Settings menu.

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Playing the Radio

⏻ VOL (Power/Volume):

- Press to turn the radio on or off.
- Rotate to increase or decrease the volume of the active source.

The steering wheel controls can also be used to adjust the volume. See *Steering Wheel Controls on page 7-7*.

Radio Operation

The radio will work when the ignition is in the ON/RUN or Accessory mode.

When the ignition is turned off, the radio will continue to operate for 10 minutes or until the driver door is opened.

The radio can be turned on by pressing the power button on the radio and will stay on for 10 minutes. Opening the driver door will not turn the radio off when pressing the power button.

The radio can be turned off at any time by pressing the power button.

Audio Source

Press SRCE or SRC on the steering wheel controls to display and scroll through the available sources AM, FM, CD, USB, AUX, and Bluetooth Audio.

Infotainment System Settings

Tone Settings

To access the tone settings, press the TONE button, or touch the Tone screen button on the Home Page. Tone settings are specific to each source.

To adjust the settings:

- Bass: Touch + or − to change the level.
- Mid (Midrange): Touch + or − to change the level.
- Treble: Touch + or − to change the level.
- EQ: Press or Rotate the TUNE/MENU switch to cycle through the preset EQ options.
- Fade: Touch the F or R button for more sound from the front or rear speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the front and rear speakers.
- Balance: Touch the L or R button for more sound from the left or right speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the left and right speakers.

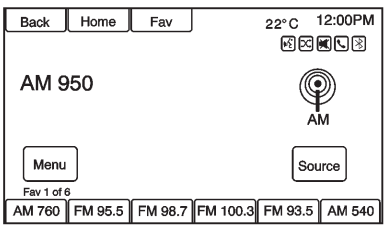
Finding a Station

Press SRCE or SRC on the steering wheel controls to select AM, FM, CD, USB, AUX, and Bluetooth Audio.

Rotate the TUNE/MENU switch to find a radio station. To select a preset station, press FAV to scroll through the favourite pages and then touch a screen button.

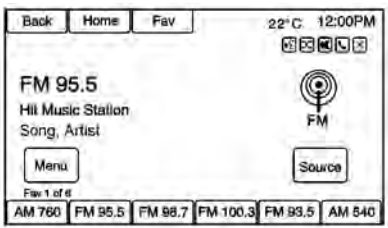
Seeking a Station

Press ◀| SEEK or SEEK |▶ to search for a station.



AM

1. Touch the AM screen button on the Home Page or select AM by pressing SRCE or SRC on the steering wheel controls, or say “Tune AM” or “AM” through voice recognition.
2. Touch the Menu screen button to display the AM Station List.
3. Touch to select an option. To update the station list, touch Update AM Station List.



FM

1. Touch the FM screen button on the Home Page or select FM by pressing SRCE or SRC on the steering wheel controls, or say “Tune FM” or “FM” through voice recognition.
2. Touch the Menu screen button to display the FM Station List.
3. Touch to select an option. To update the station list, touch Update FM Station List.

Storing Radio Station Presets

Up to 36 preset stations can be stored. AM and FM can be mixed.

1. From the AM or FM main page, touch and hold any of the preset screen buttons at the bottom of the screen. After a few seconds, a beep is heard and the new preset information displays on that screen button.
2. Repeat for each preset.

Mixed-Band Presets

Each favourite page can store six preset stations. The presets within a page can be different radio bands.

To scroll through the pages, press FAV or touch the Fav screen button on the top bar. The current page number displays above the preset buttons. The stored stations for each favourite page display on the preset buttons.

To change the number of favourite pages displayed:

1. Touch Config on the Home Page.
2. Touch Radio Settings.
3. Touch Number of Favourite Pages.
4. Select the required number of pages.

Recalling a Preset Station

To recall a preset station from a favourites page, do one of the following:

- Touch the Fav screen button at the top bar to display the preset pop-up. Touch one of the preset screen buttons to go to the selected preset station.
- In the AM or FM main page, touch one of the preset screen buttons to go to the selected preset station.

Radio Data System (RDS)

RDS features are available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information. With RDS, the radio can:

- Seek to stations broadcasting the selected type of programming.
- Display messages from radio stations.

This system relies on receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available. It is possible that a radio station could broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly.

When information is broadcast from the current FM station, the station name or call letters display on the audio screen. RDS can provide a program type (PTY) for current programming and the name of the program being broadcasted.

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as mobile phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km. Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

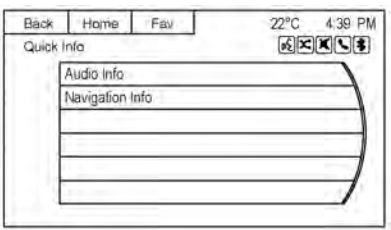
AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

Mobile Phone Usage

Mobile phone usage can cause interference with the vehicle's radio.

Quick Info



Quick Info gives access to quick information on Audio playing and Navigation.

To access, touch the Quick Info screen button on the Home Page.

Audio Info: Displays information on current item playing.

Navigation Info: Displays information on the number of available satellites, altitude and current location.

Pandora Internet Radio

Pandora® is an Internet radio service that streams personalised radio stations based on artists, songs, genres and comedians. Create stations using the Pandora website or smartphone application, then use (thumbs up) or (thumbs down) to personalise stations. To set up an account, or for more information, go to www.pandora.com.

A phone or tablet with Internet connection and the Pandora application installed is required. Personal mobile phone data plans are used. Make sure the latest version is installed on the device and the volume is turned up.

To install Pandora:

- On an Android™ phone or Android Tablet, go to the Android Play Store, search for Pandora. Install to the phone, not to the SD card.
- On a BlackBerry® phone, go to the Blackberry® App World™ and search for Pandora.
- On an iPhone®, iPad®, or iPod touch®, go to the iTunes® Store and search for Pandora.

Launching Pandora

Connect the iPhone®, iPad®, or iPod touch® to the USB port, or connect an Android™ or Blackberry® through Bluetooth®.

See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-37* or *Bluetooth on page 7-66*. For first-time use, set up stations before connecting to the vehicle. The Pandora icon will be available on the Home Page and the source pop-up displays if the latest application is installed on the device.

Using the iPhone®, iPod Touch®, or iPad®

1. Plug the device into the USB port. The phone screen must be unlocked.
2. To launch, do one of the following:
   - Launch the application on the device.
   - Touch Pandora on the Home Page.
   - Press ✆ / 🎤 and say “Tune Pandora.”

If nothing happens when the available Pandora screen button is touched, download the latest Pandora application and retry.

Pandora will always be highlighted on the Home Page when an iPhone®, iPad®, or iPod touch® is connected using the USB port. To use, log into your account.

If the “Please See Device” message is shown, the login screen may display on the device.

If Pandora is shut down on the phone or another audio app is used, Pandora may not start on the next ignition cycle.

Using an Android™ Phone

1. Pair the Android™ phone using Bluetooth®.
2. Use one of the following to launch:
   - Launch the application on the device.
   - Touch Pandora on the Home Page.
   - Press ✆ / 🎤 and say “Tune Pandora.”

If nothing happens when the available Pandora screen button is touched, download the latest Pandora application and retry.

If the “Please See Device” message is shown, the login screen may display on the device.

If the “Please unlock your phone or restart the app” message is shown then your phone may be locked. Unlock the phone, close the app, and then restart the app to ensure proper communication.

Using a Blackberry® Phone

The phone must be unlocked. To launch Pandora service:

1. Pair the Blackberry® phone using Bluetooth®.
2. Use one of the following to launch:
   - Launch the application on the device.

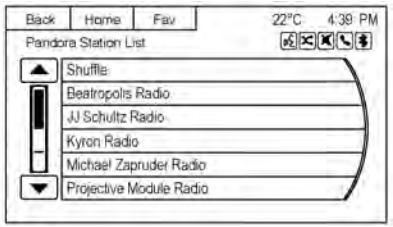
- Touch Pandora on the Home Page.
- Press ✆ / 🎙 and say “Tune Pandora.”

If nothing happens when the available Pandora screen button is touched, download the latest Pandora application and retry.

If the “Please See Device” message is shown, the login screen may display on the device.

If the “Please unlock your phone or restart the app” message is shown, then your phone may be locked. Unlock the phone, close the app, then restart the app to ensure proper communication.

Pandora Menus



Select Menu on the Pandora main page.

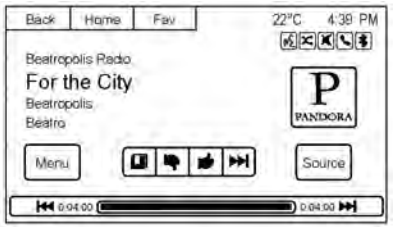
Pandora has a menu system with the following:

Shuffle: Select to play the stations in random order.

User-Created Stations: Select to play a user-created station.

Pandora Features

Pandora has features to rate songs, skip tracks, or change stations.



(Bookmarks): Touch while playing a song to bookmark either the artist or the song. Bookmarks are viewable on www.pandora.com.

(Thumbs Down): When touched, Pandora stores the information, changes to the next song, and does not play the song on this station again. This helps Pandora choose which song should not play on this station. This feature is only available on user created stations.

(Thumbs Up): When touched, Pandora stores this information and is highlighted for the

remainder of the song. This helps Pandora choose which songs should play on this station.

⏭ **(Next Track):** When touched, Pandora changes to the next song.

▶ ‖ **(Play/Pause):** Press to pause playback. Press again to resume.

Note: The Play/Pause button is not available on navigation systems.

Tuning Pandora Stations: When Pandora is playing, use the ✆ / button on the steering wheel to tune to any Pandora station on the device.

1. Press the ✆ / button on the steering wheel.
2. Say “Tune Pandora <Classic Rock> Radio.”

Pandora voice control will not work until Pandora is launched the first time during that ignition cycle.

Pandora Skip Limit

Pandora limits the number of skips allowed on their service. When the skip limit is reached, 👎 will not skip the currently playing track, but 👎 feedback will be recorded.

Pandora Advertisement

Pandora may display advertisements. Artist name and track title will not be displayed and the skip track button is not available.

Pandora Troubleshooting

Unable to Connect Device to Vehicle

If the device is unable to connect to the USB or Bluetooth®:

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Remove the key.
3. Open and close the driver door, wait about 30 seconds and try to connect the device again.

Unable to Start Pandora

If the device is unable to launch Pandora:

- Check that the latest version of Pandora is installed.
- Check that there is an active account logged into Pandora.
- Have at least one station created.
- For Android™ and Blackberry® devices, check that the device is paired with the vehicle, and the Bluetooth® icon on the display is highlighted.
- For iPhone®, iPod touch®, or iPad® devices, check that the USB cable is connected to the USB port and the screen is unlocked.
- Close Pandora on the device and launch again. Devices that allow multitasking may require an extra step to quit the Pandora application. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide.

Thumbs Up or Thumbs Down Error

If there is an error trying to rate a track with the 👎 or 👍 buttons, the message “Thumbs Down Error” or “Thumbs Up Error” will display. Touch OK to retry.

Loss of Audio

Loss of Pandora audio can happen in different ways:

- Weak or lost data connection.
- Device needs to be charged.
- Application needs to be relaunched.
- Connection between phone and radio lost.
- If any iPhone®, iPod touch®, or iPad® is connected to Bluetooth® and the dock connector, go to the Airplay icon on the device and select dock connector or disconnect and reconnect the dock connector on the device.
- The volume is too low. Turn up the volume on the device.
- The battery saver and task manager applications on the phone can cause Pandora to function incorrectly. Remove those apps from the phone or remove Pandora and Bluetooth® from the task lists.

If the connection is lost between the application and device, a message “Please unlock your phone or restart the phone app and try again” will display. Touch OK to retry.

If touching OK does not clear the issue on the phone, see "Please Unlock Your Phone or Restart Phone App and Try Again” under "Common Pandora Messages" following.

Common Pandora Messages

Please See Device: When not logged in or when authentication failed, see the device. Touch OK to continue.

Paused or Audio Paused: Playback is paused on the radio or on the device. Press ▶‖ or play on the device.

No Stations Found: Logged in but no stations have been created. Touch OK to continue.

Please Unlock Your Phone or Restart Phone App and Try Again: Communication failure between the radio and the phone application or the device is locked.

Devices that allow multitasking may require an extra step to quit the Pandora application. Close Pandora on the device and launch again.

Unlock the phone and check that Home Page is shown on the phone/device.

See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide.

See www.pandora.com/help for more information.

Stitcher Internet Radio

Stitcher SmartRadio™ is an Internet radio service that streams news, sports, and entertainment shows through the audio system. Create personalised, on-demand stations or discover new shows through Stitcher's preset stations. To set up an account, download the application from the Android™ Market or iTunes Store, or go to www.stitcher.com.

A phone or tablet with Internet connection is required for this application. Personal mobile phone data plans are used. Make sure the latest version is installed on the device and the volume on the device is turned up.

BlackBerry® phones are not supported for this application.

To install Stitcher:

- On an Android™ phone or Tablet with Internet connection, go to the Android™ Play Store, search for Stitcher, and install to the phone, not to the SD card.
- On an iPhone®, iPad®, or iPod touch®, go to the iTunes store and search for Stitcher.

Launching Stitcher

Connect the iPhone®, iPad®, or iPod touch® to the USB port, or connect Android™ through Bluetooth®. See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-37* or *Bluetooth on page 7-66*. For first-time use, set up the stations before connecting to the vehicle. The Stitcher icon will be available on the Home Page and source pop-up displays if the latest application is installed on the device.

Using the iPhone®, iPod touch®, or iPad®

1. Plug the device into the USB port. The phone screen must be unlocked.
2. Use one of the following to launch:
   - Select the application on the device.
   - Select Stitcher on the Home Page.
   - Press ✆ / 🎤 and say “Tune Stitcher.”
3. If Stitcher does not begin playing, select a category and then a station.

If nothing happens when the available Stitcher screen button is touched, download the latest Stitcher application and retry.

Stitcher will always be highlighted on the Home Page when an iPhone®, iPad®, or iPod touch® is connected using the USB port. To use, log into your account.

If the “Please See Device” message is shown, the login screen may display on the device.

If the “Please unlock your phone or restart the app” message is shown, then the phone may be locked. Unlock the phone, close the app, then restart the app and make sure the home page is visible on the phone/device.

It may be necessary to allow the infotainment system to communicate with the device. Acknowledge any requests.

Using an Android™ Phone

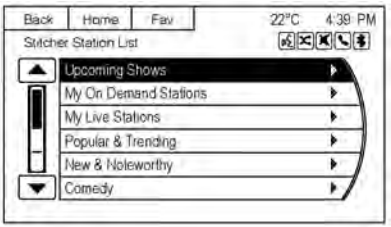
1. Pair the Android™ phone using Bluetooth®.
2. Use one of the following to launch:
   - Select the application on the device.
   - Select Stitcher on the Home Page.
   - Press ✆ / 🎙 and say “Tune Stitcher.”
3. If Stitcher does not begin playing, select a category and then a station.

If nothing happens when the available Stitcher screen button is touched, download the latest Stitcher application and retry.

If the “Please See Device” message is shown, the login screen may display on the device.

If the “Please unlock your phone or restart the app” message is shown, then your phone may be locked. Unlock the phone, close the app, then restart the app to ensure proper communication.

Stitcher Menus



Select Menu on the Stitcher main page.

Stitcher has a menu system that may include the following:

Upcoming Shows: Displays a list of upcoming shows on the current station.

My On Demand Stations: Displays a list of favourite stations and shows.

Select and store programs as favourites on the device. Favourite station lists can be created to include favourite shows which can be accessed through My On Demand Stations.

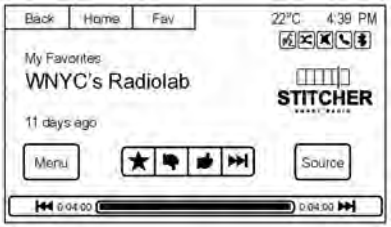
Stitcher Station Categories: Displays categories by topic.

When a category then sub-category is selected, the radio will start playing the first program in that sub-category.

Rotate the TUNE/MENU knob to display the first 24 stations of that sub-category.

Stitcher Features

Stitcher service has features to rate or skip shows, or change stations.



★ **(Favourites):** When touched, the current show is added to the favourites station.

(Thumbs Down): When touched, Stitcher changes to the next show. This helps Stitcher provide a personalised listening experience.

(Thumbs Up): When touched, Stitcher stores this information and is highlighted for the remainder of the show. This helps Stitcher provide a personalised listening experience.

(Next Show): When touched, Stitcher changes to the next show.

(Play/Pause): Press to pause playback. Press again to resume.

Note: The Play/Pause button is not available on navigation systems.

Stitcher Advertisement

Stitcher may display advertisements. Artist name and title may not display and the skip track button is not available.

Switching Between Pandora and Stitcher

To switch between Pandora and Stitcher, select the application icon on the iPhone®, iPod touch®, or iPad®. This is not required for Android™ devices. See *Pandora Internet Radio on page 7-18*.

Stitcher Troubleshooting

Unable to Connect Device to Vehicle

If the device is unable to connect to the USB or Bluetooth®:

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Remove the key.
3. Open and close the driver door, wait about 30 seconds, and try to connect the device again.

The battery saver and task manager applications on the phone can cause Stitcher to function incorrectly. Remove those apps from the phone or remove Stitcher and Bluetooth® from the task lists.

Unable to Start Stitcher

If the device is unable to launch Stitcher:

- Check that the latest version of Stitcher is installed.
- Check that there is an active account logged into Stitcher.

- For Android™ devices, check that the device is paired with the vehicle, and the Bluetooth® icon on the display is highlighted.
- For iPhone®, iPod touch®, or iPad® devices, check that the USB cable is connected to the USB port and the screen is unlocked and the Home Page is showing.
- Close Stitcher on the device and launch again. Devices that allow multitasking may require an extra step to quit the Stitcher application. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide.

Loss of Audio

Loss of Stitcher audio can happen due to:

- Weak or lost data connection.
- Device needs to be charged.
- Application needs to be relaunched.
- Connection between phone and radio is lost.
- If any iPhone®, iPod touch®, or iPad® is connected to Bluetooth® and the dock connector, go to the Airplay icon on the device and select dock connector or disconnect and reconnect the dock connector on the device.
- The volume is too low. Turn up the volume on the device.

If the connection is lost between the application and device, a message "Please unlock your phone or restart the phone app and try again" will display. Touch OK to retry.

If touching OK does not clear the issue, see "Please unlock your phone or restart phone app and try again" under "Common Stitcher Messages" following.

Common Stitcher Messages

Please Try Again Later: A general error has occurred. A data connection may be unavailable due to a weak or lost signal or the Stitcher service being temporarily down. Touch OK to continue.

Paused or Audio Paused: Playback is paused on the radio or on device. Press ⏵/⏸ or play on the device.

Please See Device: When user is not logged in or when authentication failed, see the device. Touch OK to continue. Disconnect the phone from the radio and follow the Stitcher account login process on the phone.

No Stations Found: Logged in but no stations have been created. Touch OK to continue.

Please Choose a New Station: The end of the station has been reached and there is no more content to play. Select a new station through the Stitcher menu.

Please Unlock Your Phone or Restart Phone App and Try Again: Communication failure between the radio and the phone application or the device is locked.

See www.stitcher.com/help for more information. If the service will not work, send an e-mail to feedback@stitcher.com.

Audio Players

CD Player

The CD player is capable of playing:

- Most audio CDs
- CD-R
- CD-RW
- MP3, unprotected WMA, and AAC formats

When playing any compatible recordable disc, the sound quality may be reduced due to the disc, the method of recording, the quality of the music recorded, or how the disc has been handled.

There may be increased skipping, difficulty reading recorded tracks, finding tracks, and/or loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the disc for damage or try a known good disc.

To avoid damage to the CD player:

- Do not use scratched or damaged discs.
- Do not apply labels to discs. The labels could get caught in the player.
- Insert only one disc at a time.
- Keep the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.
- Use a marking pen to label the top of the disc.

Loading and Ejecting Discs

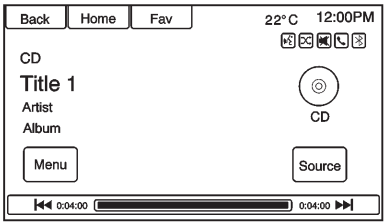
To load a disc:

1. Turn the infotainment system on.
2. Insert a disc into the slot, right side up. The player pulls it in the rest of the way. If the disc is damaged or improperly loaded, there is an error and the disc ejects.

The disc automatically plays once loaded.

Press ⏏ to eject a disc from the CD player. If the disc is not removed within a short period of time, it is automatically pulled back into the player.

Playing an Audio CD



1. Touch the CD screen button on the Home Page or select CD from the source pop-up to display the CD main page.
2. Touch the Menu screen button to display the menu options.
3. Touch to select the option.

On the CD main page, the track number displays and the Song, Artist, and Album information displays when available.

Use the following radio controls to play the disc:

⏯ (Play/Pause): Use to pause or resume play.

Note: Not available on vehicles with Navigation.

⏮ SEEK:

- Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than five seconds, it seeks to the previous track. If longer than five seconds, the current track starts from the beginning.
- Press and hold to fast reverse through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

⏭ SEEK:

- Press to seek to the next track.
- Press and hold to fast forward through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

TUNE/MENU Switch: Rotate to the right or left to select the next or previous track. Press the centre of this switch to select from the list. If a track is selected from the menu, the system plays the track and returns to the CD screen.

Error Messages

If Disc Error displays and/or the disc comes out, it could be due to:

- The disc has an invalid or unknown format.
- The disc is very hot. Try the disc again when the temperature returns to normal.
- The road is very rough. Try the disc again when the road is smoother.
- The disc is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.

- The air is very humid. Try the disc again later.
- There was a problem while burning the disc.
- The label is caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, try a known good CD.

If any error continues, contact your dealer.

MP3

Playing an MP3 CD

To play an MP3 CD, follow the same instructions as “Playing a CD or MP3 CD.”

The following guidelines must be met when creating an MP3 disc, otherwise the CD might not play:

- Sampling rate: 16 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 24 kHz, 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz, and 48 kHz.
- Bit rates supported: 8, 16, 24, 32, 40, 48, 56, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160, 192, 224, 256, and 320 kbps.
- Maximum number of folders: eight folders with 255 files per folder.
- Maximum of 1,000 files on a disc.
- Recorded on a CD-R or CD-RW.
- The Artist/Album/Song Titles/ Genre information requires a CD to be fully scanned before the music navigator works with these menus.

MP3 Music Menu

Touch the Menu screen button while that source is active to access the menu.

Touch any of the following buttons on the MP3 Menu:

Shuffle: Touch to play the tracks randomly. Touch again to stop shuffle.

Playlists: Touch to view the playlists stored on the disc. Select a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist. There might be a delay before the list displays. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Folders: Touch to open a folder list to access the files within the folder structure.

Track List: Touch to list all the tracks on the disc.

Artists: Touch to view the list of artists stored on the disc. Select an artist name to view a list of all songs by the artist. There might be a delay before the list displays. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Albums: Touch to view the albums on the disc. Select the album to view a list of all songs on the album. There might be a delay before the list displays. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Song Titles: Touch to display a list of all songs on the disc. Songs are displayed as stored on the disc.

There might be a delay before the list displays. To begin playback, select a song from the list.

Genres: Touch to view the genres. Select a genre to view a list of all songs of that genre. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Root Directory

The root directory is treated as a folder. All files contained directly under the root directory are accessed prior to any root directory folders.

Empty Folders

If a root directory or folder is empty or contains only folders, the player advances to the next folder in the file structure that contains a compressed audio file. The empty folder(s) are not displayed or numbered.

No Folder

When the CD only contains compressed audio files without any folders or playlists, all files are under the root folder.

File System and Naming

The song titles, artists, albums, and genres are taken from the file's ID3 tag and are only displayed if present in the tag. If a song title is not present in the ID3 tag, the radio displays the file name as the track name.

Preprogrammed Playlists

The radio recognises preprogrammed playlists; however, there is no editing capability. These playlists are treated as special folders containing compressed audio song files.

USB

Playing from a USB

A USB mass storage or Certified Windows Vista®/Media Transfer Protocol (MTP) device can be connected to the USB port.

The USB port is in the centre console.

The USB icon displays when the USB device is connected.

USB Media Formats

The USB port will support the following media formats:

- MP3
- Unprotected WMA
- Unprotected AAC

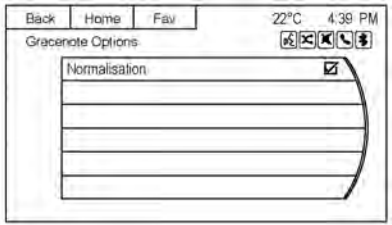
Gracenote®

Gracenote technology embedded into the radio helps manage and navigate the USB device music collection. When a USB device is connected to the radio, Gracenote identifies the music collection and delivers the correct album, artist name, genres, and cover art on the screen. If information is missing, Gracenote will fill it in if information is available, or provide information on artist, band or genre.

Searching Music Library Using Voice Recognition

Voice Recognition: Gracenote improves music search and navigation by identifying bands, artists, and albums names that may be hard to pronounce, irregular spellings, and nicknames. For example, Gracenote helps the system understand artist names like “INXS” or “Mötley Crüe”.It also allows the use of names like: “The Boss,” “G.N.R,” “The Fab Four,” and thousands of other famous artist nicknames as voice commands to access music. See *Voice Recognition on page 7-59*.

Normalisation: If equipped, normalisation helps to improve the voice recognition accuracy for titles that sound similar. It also helps group long lists of genres into 10 common genres. For example, there may be multiple rock genres in the media library; normalisation will group all those into one rock Genre. Normalisation default is off.



To turn Normalisation on:

1. Press CONFIG or touch Config on the Home Page.
2. Touch Radio Settings, then touch Gracenote Options.
3. Touch Normalisation to turn on or off.

Cover Art: The Gracenote embedded database contains cover art or album art information for the music on the USB device. If the music is recognised by Gracenote and does have cover art, Gracenote will use the cover art found in the embedded database and display it on the radio. User predefined cover art will always be used first. If no

cover art is found Gracenote will use generic Genre graphics or images of artists.

More Like This

The Gracenote database contains attributes for Music, such as genre, era of music, region, artist type, mood, etc. Use this to create a playlist of up to 30 songs "more like" currently listened to song. This playlist will be stored in the Playlist Menu when the device is reconnected. If songs are removed from the device, the system will simply skip over those songs and play the next available song.

Use the touch screen or voice recognition to create a More Like This Playlist. See “Voice Recognition Commands” in *Voice Recognition on page 7-59*.

Gracenote Indexing

While Gracenote is indexing, infotainment features are available including selecting music from the menu. Voice recognition music will not be available until the radio has completed indexing the device. Devices with more music may take longer to index. The device will index when plugged into the radio for the first time. When Indexing is removed from the screen, the radio is ready to support music search. On the next connection or ignition cycle, Indexing will show briefly on the screen. The radio is searching for changes to the device and preparing the music list. If there are no changes, the voice recognition music search will be available. The radio will index and store two devices with up to 10,000 songs on each device.

USB MP3 Player and USB Drives

- The USB MP3 players and USB drives connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).
- Hard disk drives are not supported.
- The radio will not be able to play back write-protected music.
- File systems supported: FAT32 and NTFS.
- The following restrictions apply for the data stored on a USB MP3 player or USB device:
  - Maximum folder structure depth: 8 levels.
  - Maximum number of MP3/WMA files that can be displayed: 10,000.
  - Playlist entries must be in the form of relative paths.
  - The system attribute for folders/files that contain audio data must not be set.

To play a USB device, do one of the following:

- Connect the USB and it begins to play.
- Touch the USB screen button on the Home Page.
- Press SRCE, or SRC on the steering wheel controls, to scroll until the USB source screen is available.

- Press ✆ / 🎤 on the steering wheel controls to play CD, Artist, Album, Song Title, or Song Genre. See *Voice Recognition on page 7-59*.

The following playlist formats are supported:

- M3U (Standard and Extended)
- iTunes
- PLS (Standard)
- WAX
- ASX
- RMP

The radio supports plugging a mobile phone in as a USB drive as long as the mobile phone supports USB mass storage class or has USB disc drive support enabled.

While the USB source is active, use the following to operate USB function:

TUNE/MENU Switch: Rotate to scroll through the track list. Rotate quickly to fast scroll alphabetically through large lists.

►‖ (Play/Pause): Press to start, pause, or resume play of the current media source.

Note: Not available on vehicles with Navigation.

|◄ SEEK:

- Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than five seconds, the previous track plays. If playing longer than five seconds, the current track restarts.
- Press and hold to reverse quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

►| SEEK:

- Press to seek to the next track.
- Press and hold to advance quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

USB Menu

The following are available through the USB Menu:

Shuffle: Touch to play the tracks randomly. Touch again to stop shuffle.

Play More Like This:

1. Touch to automatically create a playlist of songs that are like the song currently playing.
2. The radio will show "Playlist Creation Succeeded" and continue playing the current song.

   Playlist Creation Failed may appear if a song is not found in the Gracenote Database.

Delete Automatic Playlist: Touch to delete a More Like This playlist. Select the playlist to be deleted.

Folders: Touch to open a folder list to access the files within the folder structure.

Playlists:

1. Touch to view the playlists on the USB.
2. Select a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Artists:

1. Touch to view the list of artists on the USB.
2. Select an artist name to view a list of all songs by the artist.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Albums:

1. Touch to view the albums on the USB.
2. Select the album to view a list of all songs on the album.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Genres:

1. Touch to view the genres on the USB.
2. Select a genre to view a list of all songs of that genre.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Songs:

1. Touch to display a list of all songs on the USB.
2. Songs are displayed in alphabetical order. To begin playback, select a song from the list.

File System and Naming

The songs, artists, albums, and genres are taken from the file's song information and are only displayed if present. The infotainment system displays the file name as the track name if the song information is not available.

Playing from an iPod®

This feature supports the connection of an iPod®.

There may be problems with the operation and function in the following situations:

- When connecting an iPod® on which a more recent version of the firmware is installed than is supported by the infotainment system.
- When connecting an iPod® on which firmware from other providers is installed.

To connect an iPod®:

1. Connect one end of the standard iPod® USB cable to the iPod®.
2. Connect the other end to the USB port in the centre console.

iPod® music information displays on the radio's display and begins playing through the vehicle's audio system.

The iPod® battery recharges automatically while the vehicle is on. The iPod® shuts off and stops charging when the vehicle is shut off.

If the iPod® is an unsupported model, it can still be listened to in the vehicle by connecting to the auxiliary input jack using a standard 3.5 mm stereo cable.

iPod® Menu

Use the iPod® Menu to select:

Shuffle: Touch to play the tracks randomly. Touch again to stop shuffle.

Play More Like This: Allows the radio to create playlists with song/tracks that are similar to what is being listen to. The radio will create a playlist with up to 30 similar songs. The playlist will appear in the Playlist category of the menu for future listening.

1. Touch to automatically create a playlist of songs that are More Like the song currently playing.
2. The radio will show “Playlist Creation Succeeded” and continue playing the current song.

Delete Automatic Playlists: Touch to delete a More Like this playlist.

Playlists:

1. Touch to view the playlists on the iPod®.
2. Select a playlist name to view a list of all songs in the playlist.
3. Select the song from the list to begin playback.

Artists:

1. Touch to view the artists on the iPod®.
2. Select an artist name to view a list of all albums with songs by the artist.
3. Select an album.
4. Select the song from the list to begin playback.

Albums:

1. Touch to view the albums on the iPod®.
2. Select an album name to view a list of all songs on the album or select All Songs to view all songs on the iPod®.
3. Select the song from the list to begin playback.

Genres:

1. Touch to view the genres on the iPod®.
2. Select a genre name to view a list of artists of that genre.
3. Select an artist to view albums or All Albums to view all albums of that genre.
4. Select Artist to view albums.
5. Select Album to view songs.
6. Select the song from the list to begin playback.

Songs:

1. Touch to view a list of all songs on the iPod®.
2. Select the song from the list to begin playback.

Podcasts:

1. Touch to view the podcasts on the iPod®.
2. Select a podcast name to begin playback.

Composers:

1. Touch to view the composers on the iPod®.
2. Select the composer to view a list of songs by that composer.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Audio books:

1. Touch to view the audio books on the iPod®.
2. Select the audio book from the list to begin playback.

Playing from an iPhone® or iPad®

This feature supports iPhone® and iPad®.

Follow the same instructions as stated earlier for using an iPod®. To use voice recognition to play music, say “Play USB,” “Play Artist,” “Play Album,” “Play Song,” or “Play Genre.” See *Voice Recognition on page 7-59*.

iPhone®, iPod touch® and iPad® Troubleshooting

When an iPhone®, iPod touch®, or iPad® are connected through USB and Bluetooth®, the audio may not be heard when the iPod® source on the radio is selected. If a phone call is received while listening to the iPod® source and there is no audio for the iPod® after the source, then go to the Airplay icon on the device and select dock connector or disconnect and reconnect connector on the device.

Some functionality may differ based on operating system version on device.

USB Troubleshooting

If the device is not being recognised or the music is missing screen information, restore the radio defaults:

1. Press CONFIG or touch Config on the Home Page.
2. Touch Vehicle Settings.

3. Touch Return to Factory Settings.
4. Touch Yes.

Pair the phone again and the device will have to index again.

Bluetooth® Audio and Voice Recognition

See *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-37* and *Voice Recognition on page 7-59* for information using voice recognition with Bluetooth® audio.

Make sure all devices have the latest software downloaded.

Auxiliary Devices

This vehicle has an auxiliary input jack in the centre console. Possible auxiliary audio sources include:

- Laptop computer
- MP3 player

This jack is not an audio output. Do not plug headphones into the auxiliary input jack. Set up any auxiliary device while the vehicle is stationary and/or in P (Park).

Connect a 3.5 mm cable from the auxiliary device to the auxiliary input jack. When a device is connected, the system automatically begins playing audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

If an auxiliary device has already been connected, but a different source is currently active, do one of the following:

- Press SRCE to scroll all of the available audio source screens, until the AUX source screen is selected.
- Say “Play Front AUX” using voice recognition to play the auxiliary device. See *Voice Recognition on page 7-59*.

Bluetooth Audio

If equipped, music may be played from a paired Bluetooth® device. See “Pairing a Phone/Device” under *Bluetooth on page 7-66*.

To play music through a Bluetooth® device:

1. Power on the device, pair, and connect the device.

2. Music can be launched by doing one of the following:
   - Touch the Bluetooth Audio screen button on the Home Page.
   - Press SRCE until Bluetooth Audio is selected.
   - Press the SRC button on the steering wheel controls until Bluetooth Audio is selected. See *Steering Wheel Controls on page 7-7*.
   - Use voice recognition. See *Voice Recognition on page 7-59*.

The music can be controlled by either the infotainment controls or the controls on the device.

When a phone is connected to the system through Bluetooth® Audio the phone notifications and sounds may not be heard on the phone until Bluetooth® is disconnected. Notification features may vary based on the phone. Check the phone manufacturer's information for notification support.

Bluetooth® Audio Menu

Touch the Menu screen button and the following may display:

Shuffle: Press TUNE/MENU to turn shuffle on or off. Not all devices support the shuffle feature.

When selecting Bluetooth® audio, the Bluetooth® device internal music player may not open depending on the status of the device. All devices launch and play back audio differently. Make sure the correct audio source is playing on the device for Bluetooth® audio playback on the infotainment system. When the vehicle is not moving, use the device to begin playback.

When selecting Bluetooth® audio as a source, the infotainment system may display the Bluetooth Audio Paused screen with no audio playing. Press play on the device or press ►‖ to begin playback. This may happen depending on how the device communicates over Bluetooth®.

Note: The ►‖ button is not available on vehicles with navigation.

Some phones support sending Bluetooth® music information to display on the infotainment system. When the infotainment system receives this information, it will check to see if any album art is available and display it if available.

When playing music on the infotainment system from a Bluetooth® device, make sure the Bluetooth® device is unlocked and the intended music application is showing on the home screen.

For iPhone®/iPod touch® and iPad® devices, Bluetooth® Audio will not work if the device is connected through the USB and Bluetooth® at the same time.

Navigation

Using the Navigation System

The vehicle may have a Navigation system.

⚠ Danger

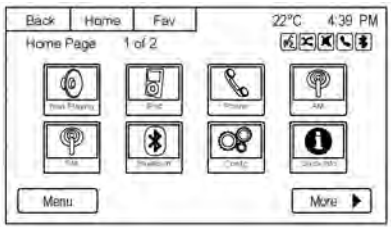
Giving extended attention to navigation tasks while driving will greatly increase the risk of a collision that may cause personal injury or death.

Road safety has absolute priority!

Only operate this system if the road and traffic conditions allow you to do so.

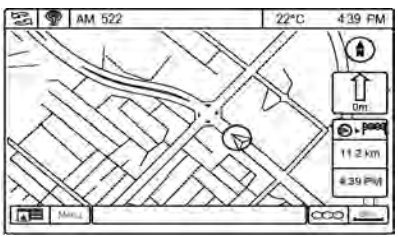
The driver's full attention is always required while driving.

Use voice guidance directions whenever possible.



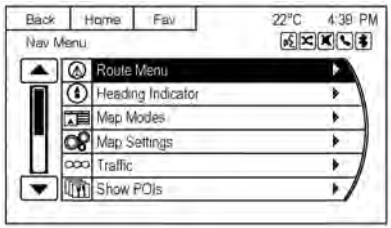
Use the NAV button or Navigation on the Home Page to access the navigation map.

Press the NAV button again to change between alternative views of the normal split and full map views.



The Menu screen button at the bottom left side of the display accesses the Navigation Menu.

The touch screen buttons available are:



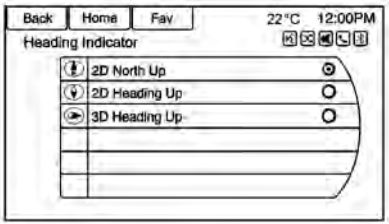
Destination Entry

See *Destination on page 7-45*.

Route Menu

See “Menu with Route Guidance Active” under *Destination on page 7-45*.

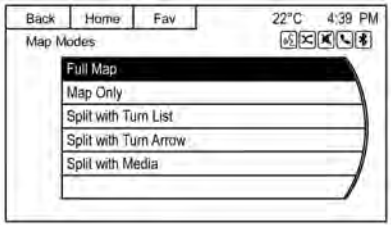
Heading Indicator



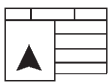
Touch Heading Indicator to display the Map View. There are three indicator settings:

- 2D North Up: Displays North at the top of the map screen regardless of the direction the vehicle is travelling.
- 2D Heading Up: Displays the direction the vehicle is travelling. The shaded triangle icon points North.
- 3D Heading Up: Is the same as 2D Heading Up, but the map is in 3D.

Map Modes

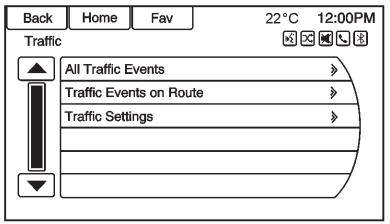


Touch to change the view of the maps while using the navigation function. The system offers a variety of full and split views. Some views are only selectable when route guidance is active.



An alternative method to change the view of the maps would be to touch the map mode icon.

Traffic



Touch Traffic to display the Traffic Menu. Select the desired option.

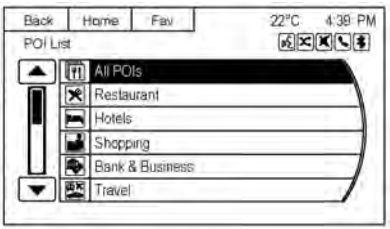
Options available are:

- All Traffic Events: Select to view all reported traffic events while on or off a planned route.
- Traffic Events on Route: Select to view traffic events while on a planned route.
- Traffic Settings: Select to customise traffic options.

  This feature can also be accessed by pressing the traffic light screen button displayed at

the left lower side of the map screen. See *Configure Menu on page 7-53* in this section.

Nearby POIs



Select to display a search list of nearby POIs. Select the desired POI.

POIs Along Route

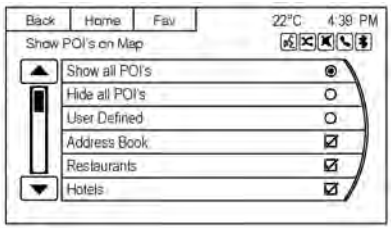
Select to display a search list of POIs that lie along or near the route to the destination. Select the desired POI.

Exit List

The Exit list displays upcoming road exits, if information is available.

Note: Not all roads are supported with this information.

Show POIs



Select to customise which major POI categories are displayed on the map.

Switch Route Time/Destination

Touch to customise the Arrival/ Travel time and Waypoint/ Destination information displayed in the main map screen.

Current Position Info

Touch to display a split screen showing detailed information about the vehicle position. This feature can also be accessed by touching the vehicle information tab on the lower centre of the display. The location can be saved to the Address Book by touching Save in the split screen.

Destination Position Info

Touch to display a split screen showing detailed information about the destination. The location can be saved to the Address Book by touching Save in the split screen.

Map Adjustments

The system lets you adjust the scale of view on the map. Also, as you drive, the map scrolls automatically based on the direction of travel.

Map Scales

There are two methods to change the map scale:

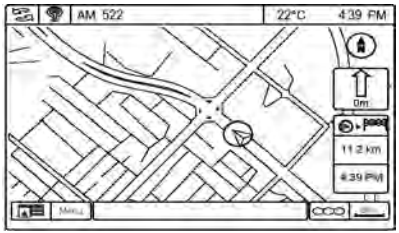
- Rotate the TUNE/MENU switch clockwise or anticlockwise to zoom out or in.
- Touch the Map Scale + or − button on the bottom corners of the map screen to change the zoom level.

  The map scale bar times out if the zoom level is not changed within a few seconds.

Scroll Features

- To scroll within the map, touch anywhere on the map screen and the scroll symbol displays.
- Touch the map to centre at that location on the screen.
- Touch and hold the screen in any direction outside the scroll symbol to scroll the map in that direction.
- Scroll speed increases when touching closer to the edge of the screen.
- Press the NAV button to exit map scrolling and return to the current vehicle location on the map.

Touch the cycling arrows located at the top of the map screen to toggle from the normal top bar (Home and Fav) to the audio information bar.



Maps

This section includes basic information about the map database.

The maps are stored in an internal flash memory that is used in the Navigation system.

Detailed Areas

Road network attributes are contained in the map database for detailed areas. Attributes include information such as street names, street addresses and turn restrictions. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads and residential roads. The detailed areas include points of interest (POIs) such as restaurants, airports, banks, hospitals, police stations, petrol stations, tourist attractions and historical monuments. The map database may not include data for newly constructed areas or map database corrections after the production of the infotainment system. The Navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas.

Navigation Symbols

Following are the most common symbols that appear on a map screen.

The vehicle symbol indicates the current position and heading direction of the vehicle on the map.

The destination symbol marks the final destination after a route has been planned.

The waypoint symbol marks one or more set waypoints.

A waypoint is a stopover destination point added to the planned route.

The estimated time and distance to the destination are displayed.

If waypoints have been added to the current route, each waypoint destination displays estimated time and distance.

This symbol indicates that the map view is North up: North up displays North at the top of the map screen regardless of the direction the vehicle is travelling.

Touch this screen symbol to change the view to Heading up or 3D.

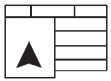
This symbol indicates that the map view is Heading up.

Heading up view displays the direction the vehicle is travelling at the top of the map screen. The shaded triangle indicates North.

Touch this screen symbol to change to 3D mode.

The 3D symbol is the same as the Heading up symbol, but the map is in 3D.

The No GPS symbol appears when there is no Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite signal.



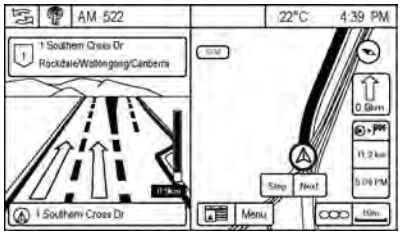
This symbol at the bottom of a map screen changes the current map mode screen.

This symbol on the right of the map screen displays the speed limit while on a route. The speed limit may not always be accurate due to changes since the map data was created. Always follow the posted speed limit on the road.

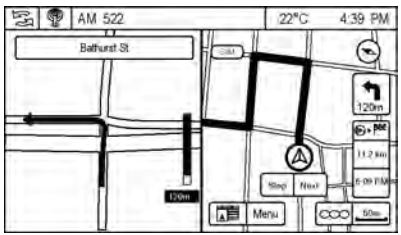
Driving on a Route

Urgent Manoeuvre Alert

The system will give an indication that the next manoeuvre is close.

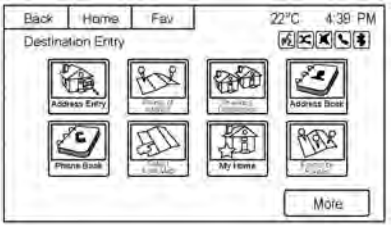


Driving on a Highway



Driving on a Residential Road

Destination



If route guidance is not activated, touch the Destination Entry screen button on the Home Page to access the Destination Entry screen. Several options can be selected to plan a route by entering destinations. Some destination entry items such as Previous Destinations, Address Book and My Home may be greyed out if no destination was previously entered or saved.

Alpha-Numeric Keyboard

Letters of the alphabet, symbols, punctuation and numbers, when available, display on the Navigation screen as alpha/numeric keyboards. The alpha keyboard displays when data needs to be entered.

QWERTY or ABC: Touch to toggle between QWERTY or ABCDEF keyboard character layouts.

ÄÖ or Sym: Touch to toggle between additional characters or symbols.

Space: Use to enter a space between characters or the words of a name.

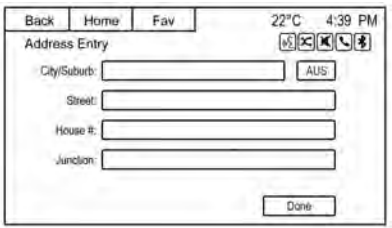
Delete: Touch to delete an incorrect character that has been selected.

Address Entry

Touch the Address Entry screen button to display the Address Entry screen. Set a route by selecting the

country, entering the city/suburb name, street name, house number and street junction.

To make name selection easier, the system highlights only characters that are available after the previously entered one.



City/Suburb: Enter a city/suburb name.

Street: Enter a street name.

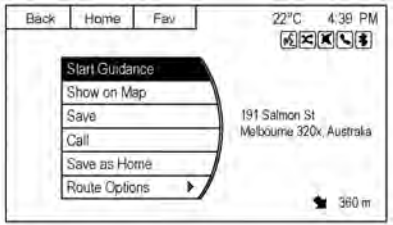
House #: Enter a valid address number.

Junction: Enter a street name that intersects with the selected street.

Entering the city/suburb name first:

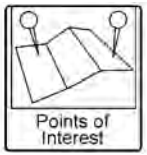
1. Enter the city/suburb name.
2. Enter the street name. Use the Delete screen button to delete an incorrectly entered character.

   A list displays if six or fewer names are available. If there are more than six, there is a match counter with a number of available streets. Touch the List screen button to view the list and select the street.
3. Enter the house number.
4. Touch the Done screen button at any time and the system tries to resolve a destination based on the entered information, then displays it on the Destination Confirmation screen.

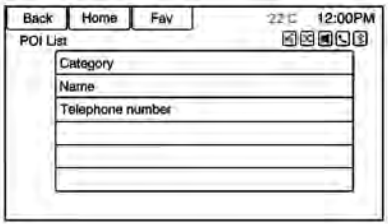


5. Touch the Start Guidance screen button and the route calculates.

Points of Interest (POI)

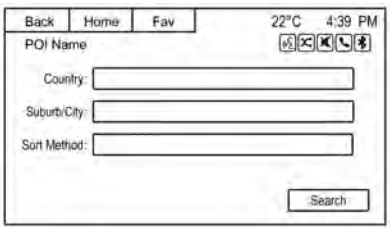


Touch the Points of Interest screen button on the Destination Entry page. Several options can be selected to plan a route.

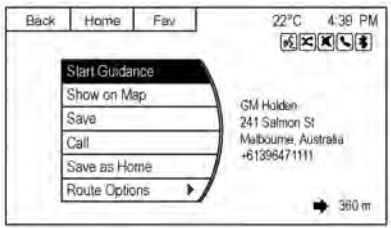


The POI entry list allows selection of a destination search by category, name, or number.

Entering by POI name:



1. Select Search by Name.
2. Make sure the correct country, suburb or city are present, then select Search.
3. Enter the POI name.
4. Select a few of the characters or spell the name in full, by using the alpha keyboard.
5. Touch the List screen button, or if the list has six or fewer items, a list of POIs will immediately display.
6. Select the desired POI.



7. Touch the Start Guidance screen button and the route calculates.

Previous Destinations

Select a destination from the Previous Destination List. Up to 15 points that have been previously entered can be recalled. If the list is full, the oldest destinations are automatically deleted once the newest destinations are added.

Address Book

If no destination is saved to the address book, save a destination:

1. Touch Destination on the Home Page.

2. Enter an address using any of the destination methods (Address Entry, POI Entry, etc.).
3. On the Destination Confirmation screen, select Save.
4. The system displays the options Name, Address, Number, Icon and Done. Touch Done to save the destination.
5. To customise the address book entry, select Name, Address, Number or Icon.

If a destination is already saved to the address book, touch Destination Entry on the Home Page to display the Address Book screen button.

Choose a destination by selecting an address that has been stored in the address book.

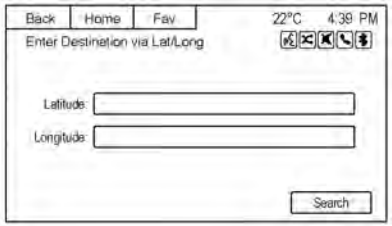
1. Touch the Address Book screen button. A list displays the address book entries.
2. Select the destination from the list.
3. Touch the Start Guidance screen button and the route calculates.

To edit Address Book entries:

1. Select an item from the address book.
2. On the Destination Confirmation screen, select Edit.
3. The system displays the options Name, Address, Number, Icon and Delete. Touch Delete to delete the destination from the address book.
4. To customise the address book entry, select Name, Number, or Icon.
5. Select Done when complete.

Latitude/Longitude Coordinates

Choose a destination based on latitudinal and longitudinal coordinates.

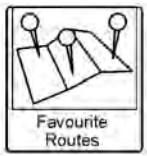


To enter the location as coordinates, latitude and longitude:

1. Touch Destination on the Home Page. Touch the Latitude and Longitude screen button to display the screen above.
2. Select Latitude or Longitude to change. Enter the coordinates in degrees, minutes, and seconds. Then touch Back to save and exit.
3. Touch the Search screen button if the information is correct.

4. Touch the Start Guidance screen button. The route calculates.

Favourite Routes



Adding a Favourite Route:

1. Touch the Home Page Destination screen button to display the Favourite Routes screen button.
2. Touch the Favourite Routes screen button to display New Favourite Route.
3. Select New Favourite Route and enter a favourite route name.
4. Touch OK and the display returns to the favourite route information screen.
5. Add a waypoint by using any of the destination methods, such as address entry, POI entry, etc.
6. Touch Back to save and exit.

Selecting a Favourite Route:

1. Touch the Home Page Destination screen button to display the Favourite Routes screen button.
2. Touch the Favourite Routes screen button to display a list of available favourite routes.
3. Scroll and select a favourite route.
4. Touch the Start Guidance screen button. The route calculates.

Deleting a favourite route:

1. Touch the Home Page Destination screen button to display the Favourite Routes screen button. Touch this button to display the list of available favourite routes.
2. Scroll and select the route to be deleted.
3. Touch Delete Favourite.
4. Touch Confirm to delete the Favourite Route.

Changing the route name:

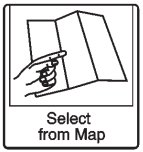
1. Touch the Home Page Destination screen button to display the Favourite Routes screen button. Touch this button to display the list of available favourite routes.
2. Scroll and select the route to edit.
3. Select Edit Name.
4. Using the keypad, enter the name.
5. Touch the OK screen button. The new name will be in the Favourite Routes Menu.

My Home

If no home destination is entered, save a destination by touching the Home Page Destination screen button. Enter a destination using any of the destination entry methods (Address Entry, POI Entry, etc.). Select Save as Home from the Destination Confirmation screen.

If a destination is already saved as home, touch the Home Page Destination screen button to display the My Home screen button. Touch this button to start route guidance.

Select from Map



1. Touch the Home Page Destination screen button to display the Select from Map screen button. Touch this button to display the map screen with the current location.
2. Touch the Zoom in/out button on the screen and touch the map to locate the destination to select. Touch and hold a finger on the map to activate fast scrolling.

   The scroll symbol will be centred on the map.
3. Touch the Go button on the bottom of the screen to display the Destination Confirmation screen.
4. Touch the Start Guidance screen button. The route calculates.

Destination Confirmation

Multiple options are available on the Destination Confirmation screen:

Start Guidance: Touch to start a route calculation to the displayed destination.

Show on Map: Touch to switch to the map view with the displayed destination centred on the map.

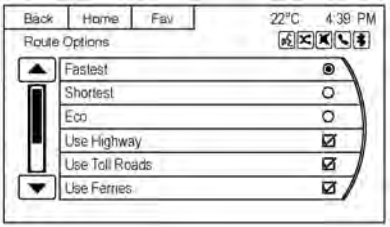
Route Options: Touch to change route options. See “Route Options” following.

Call: Touch to initiate a phone call to the displayed phone number, if phone capability is available.

Save as Home: Touch to save the displayed destination as your home destination. The home destination will be stored at the top of the list of destinations in the address book.

Save/Edit: Touch to save the displayed destination into the address book. If the displayed destination is already stored in the address book, Edit will show as the menu item.

Route Options



Touch to display various route options.

Fastest: This calculates the quickest route.

Shortest: This calculates the shortest route.

Eco: This calculates the most fuel-efficient route based on speed and distance.

Under the Route Options menu, there are route preferences that by default are all enabled.
A checkmark placed next to each preference indicates this. All of these preferences are used when calculating the route. If any of these preferences are unselected, the route will be calculated without including these preferences.

Use Highways: Deselect to avoid major roads.

Use Toll Road: Deselect to avoid toll roads.

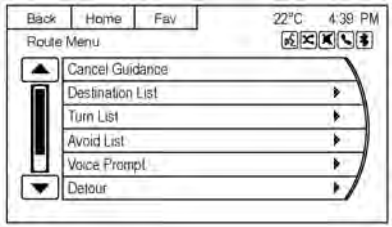
Use Ferries: Deselect to avoid ferries.

Use Tunnels: Deselect to avoid tunnels.

Use Time Restricted: Deselect to avoid time restricted roads.

Use Car Train: Deselect to avoid car trains.

Menu with Route Guidance Active



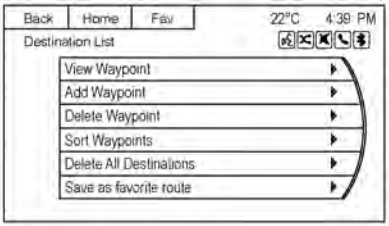
Several functions can be performed after a destination has been entered. Touch the Home Page Destination screen button or press the DEST button to access the Route Menu screen.

Cancel Guidance

Touch Cancel Guidance to cancel the current route.

Destination List

Up to three waypoints can be added to the current route. The waypoints can be sorted (moved) or deleted.

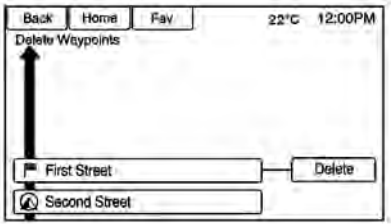


To add a waypoint:

1. From the Destination List menu, touch Add Waypoint.
2. Enter the waypoint by any of the add destination methods. The system calculates and highlights the route and the route can be started.
3. To add more waypoints, touch Add Waypoint to add the waypoint in the order desired on the route.

To delete a waypoint:

1. From the Destination menu, touch Delete Waypoint.



2. Select the waypoints to be deleted. Touch the Delete screen button.

The Sort Waypoints feature allows reorganisation of the destination list.

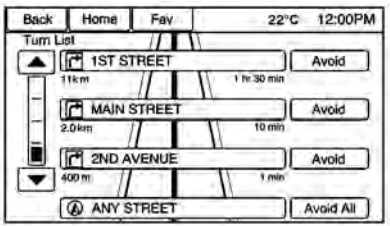
To sort a waypoint:

1. From the Route menu, touch Destination List.
2. Touch Sort Waypoints.
3. Select the waypoint to move.
4. Select the location to move the waypoint to.
5. Touch Add.

Instead of deleting individual waypoints, select Delete All to delete all waypoints at the same time.

To save a destination list as a favourite route, select Save as Favourite Route.

Turn List



Select Turn List to view a list of manoeuvres for the entire route. Touch the Avoid screen button next to one of the turn manoeuvres to avoid a segment of roads.
A maximum of 8 avoided segments are allowed.

Avoid List

Select Avoid List to display a list of avoided road segments with the option to remove the avoided items from the list.

Voice Prompt

Select Voice Prompt to view options to disable or manage navigation voice prompts and traffic alert prompts.

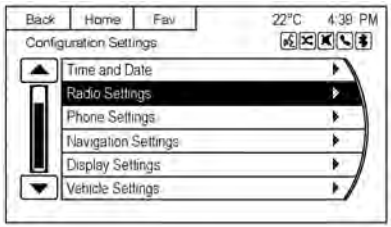
Detour

Select Detour to display the route detour options. Select to detour the whole route or by a specific distance.

Route Options

This feature can be accessed from the Destination Confirmation Menu and Route Menu with Route Guidance Active. See “Destination Confirmation” for more information.

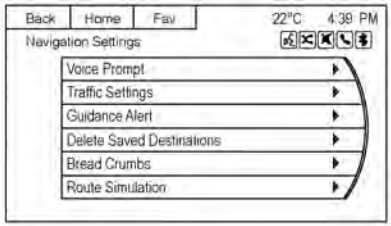
Configure Menu



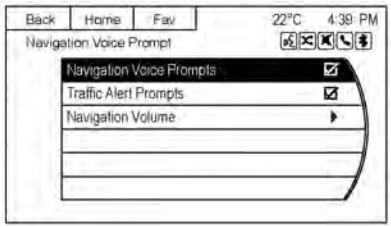
Touch the Config button on the Home Page to enter the setup menu. Rotate the TUNE/MENU switch or touch the scroll bar until the Navigation Settings option displays. Select this feature to make changes to Voice Prompt, Traffic Settings, Guidance Alert, Delete Saved Destinations, Bread Crumbs and Route Simulation.

Some options are available only after a route is planned.

Select Navigation Settings to access the navigation system settings menu.



Voice Prompt



The Voice Prompt Menu allows changes to the voice prompt features.

Navigation Voice Prompts: Select to turn the voice instructions on or off while travelling on a planned route.

Traffic Alert Prompts: Select to turn the traffic voice prompt on or off while travelling on a planned route.

Navigation Volume: Select Navigation Volume to change the volume of the navigation prompts.

Traffic Settings

Touch to display the Traffic Settings menu.

Traffic Events: Touch to enable or disable the traffic feature.

Traffic Alert Prompts: Touch to enable or disable the traffic voice prompts.

Alert if better route is available: Touch to prompt an alert if a better route is available.

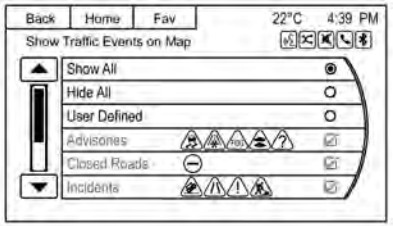
Sort Method: Touch to display a submenu of sort options.

- Sort by Distance: Touch to display traffic events in order of distance with the closest event shown first.
- Sort by Road Name: Touch to display traffic events in alphabetical road name order.

Show Traffic Events on Map: Touch to display traffic icons on the map.

Traffic icons with route guidance inactive are displayed in colour.

Traffic icons with route guidance active will display in colour on the route selected, and in grey off the route selected.



- Show All: Touch to enable display of all traffic icons on the map.
- Hide All: Touch to disable display of all traffic icons on the map.
- User Defined: Touch to define the individual types of icons that are displayed for traffic flow and traffic conditions.

Traffic Flow

The traffic flow status will display in green, yellow, or red lines beside the road.

- Red indicates significantly impaired traffic flow with average speed less than 40 km/h.

- Yellow indicates slightly impaired traffic flow with average speed between 40 and 73 km/h.
- Green indicates normal traffic flow with average speed above 73 km/h.

Closed Roads, Incidents, Traffic Delays, Roadwork, Incidents, and Advisories

Select the traffic event group for display on the map screen. Some events may cover more than one traffic condition. See the following traffic conditions.

Traffic Conditions

The following traffic condition icons may display:

Stopped Traffic

Traffic Jam

Accident

Road Closed

Lane Narrows

Road Work, Construction

Alert

Road Condition

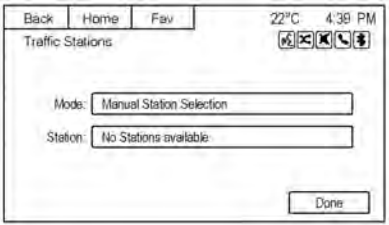
Road Visibility

Other

Delay

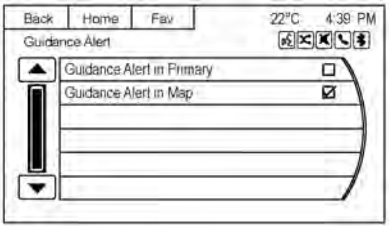
Traffic Stations

Select to display the Traffic Stations screen.



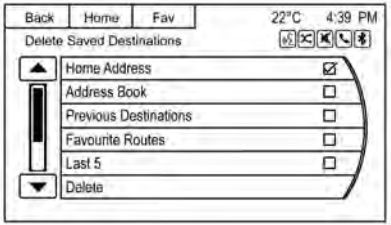
Select either Manual or Automatic Station Selection mode to choose a radio station that broadcasts Traffic Message Channel (TMC) information.

Guidance Alerts



Select to enable the guidance alert pop-up to be viewed on the map or on the main screens such as audio, phone, etc. A ☑ appears to indicate the guidance alert mode is on.

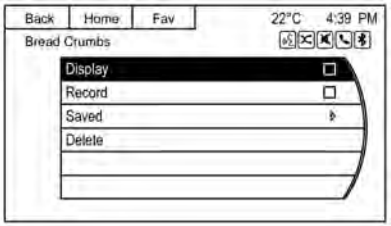
Delete Saved Destinations



Select to delete all saved destinations. A Delete Saved Destinations submenu displays. Select the desired options for deletion and press delete at the bottom to continue. A confirmation screen displays requesting to delete or cancel.

Bread Crumbs

Bread crumbs, when displayed, show a previously followed route.



Select Display to enable bread crumbs on the map display.

It is possible to record and store bread crumbs to retrieve journeys for future reference.

Previously stored bread crumbs can be loaded from the Saved menu item, and then displayed by selecting Show on Map.

Route Simulation

Select to display a route simulation.

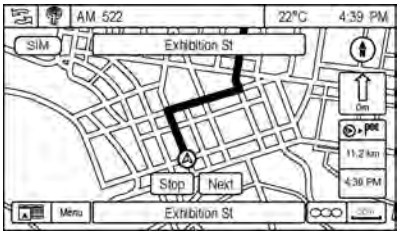
Use Last Known Position: Select to start the simulation from the last known position.

Use Previous Destination: Select to start the simulation from a previous destination.

Use Specified Location: Select to start the simulation from a specified location.

Once the starting position for the simulation is selected, select Navigation and the Map display will be in Simulation mode. **SIM** is displayed on the map.

Select and enter the destination as for a normal journey and select Start Guidance to calculate the route in Simulation mode.



Touch Next to skip to the next turn, or touch Stop to pause the simulation.

To stop the simulation, press DEST and select Cancel Guidance.

To exit from Simulation mode, return to the Navigation Settings menu, select Route Simulation, then select Cancel Route Simulation.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

The position of the vehicle is determined by using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, and map data.

At times, other interference such as the satellite condition, road configuration, condition of the vehicle, and/or other circumstances can affect the navigation system's ability to determine the accurate position of the vehicle.

The GPS shows the current position of the vehicle using signals sent by GPS Satellites. When the vehicle is not receiving signals from the satellites, a symbol appears on the map screen. See *Navigation Symbols on page 7-43*.

This system might not be available or interference can occur if any of the following are true:

- Signals are obstructed by tall buildings, trees, large trucks, or a tunnel.
- Satellites are being repaired or improved.

For more information if the GPS is not functioning properly, see *Problems with Route Guidance on page 7-58*.

Vehicle Positioning

At times, the position of the vehicle on the map could be inaccurate due to one or more of the following reasons:

- The road system has changed.
- The vehicle is driving on slippery road surfaces such as sand, gravel or snow.
- The vehicle is travelling on winding roads or long straight roads.

- The vehicle is approaching a tall building or a large vehicle.
- The surface streets run parallel to a freeway.
- If a tunnel runs parallel to a surface road.
- The vehicle has been transferred by a vehicle carrier or a ferry.
- The current position calibration is set incorrectly.
- The vehicle is travelling at high speed.
- The vehicle changes direction more than once, or the vehicle is turning on a turn table in a parking lot.
- The vehicle is entering and/or exiting a parking lot, garage or a lot with a roof.
- The GPS signal is not received.
- A roof rack is installed on the vehicle.
- Tyre chains have been installed.
- The tyres are replaced or worn.
- The tyre pressure for the tyres is incorrect.
- This is the first Navigation use after the map data is updated.
- The 12-volt battery is disconnected for several days.
- The vehicle is driving in heavy traffic where driving is at low speeds and the vehicle is stopped and started repeatedly.

Problems with Route Guidance

Inappropriate route guidance can occur under one or more of the following conditions:

- The turn was not made on the road indicated.
- Route guidance might not be available when using automatic rerouting for the next right or left turn.
- The route might not be changed when using automatic rerouting.
- There is no route guidance when turning at an intersection.
- Plural names of places might be announced occasionally.
- It could take a long time to operate automatic rerouting during high-speed driving.
- Automatic rerouting might display a route returning to the set waypoint if heading for a destination without passing through a set waypoint.
- The route prohibits the entry of a vehicle due to a regulation by time or season or any other regulation which may be given.
- The route to the destination might not be shown if there are new roads, if roads have recently changed, or if certain roads are not listed in the map data. See *Maps on page 7-42*.

To recalibrate the vehicle's position on the map, park with the vehicle running for two to five minutes, until the vehicle position updates. Make

sure the vehicle is parked in a location that is safe and has a clear view of the sky and away from large obstruction.

Map Data Updates

The map data in the vehicle is the most up-to-date information available when the vehicle was produced. The map data is updated periodically, provided that the map information has changed.

To check for the availability of updated maps, contact your dealer.

Database Coverage Explanations

Coverage areas vary with respect to the level of map detail available for any given area. Some areas feature greater levels of detail than others. If this happens, it does not mean there is a problem with the system. As the map data is updated, more detail can become available for areas that previously had limited detail. See *Map Data Updates on page 7-59*.

Voice Recognition

Voice recognition allows for hands-free operation of the infotainment system features.

Voice recognition can be used when the infotainment system is on. The system maintains a minimum volume level.

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press ✆ / on the steering wheel. The audio system mutes. A voice prompt states, “Please say a command.” Wait until the tone is heard before speaking.

   If there is no tone, make sure that the volume is turned up.

   While voice recognition is active, the system displays a symbol in the top right of the screen.
2. Clearly speak one of the commands listed later in this section.

Press ✆ / ⁂ twice on the steering wheel to skip the voice prompt messages.

Cancelling Voice Recognition

1. Press and release ⌦ / ☇ on the steering wheel control to cancel a command, if the system response does not match the voice command, or say “Goodbye” or “Cancel.”
2. The system replies, “Goodbye.”

Helpful Hints for Speaking Commands

- When multiple commands are available, choose the command that works best for you.
- Words in parentheses are optional. For example, for the command “Tune FM (frequency),” saying “Tune FM 87.7” or “Tune FM” are both valid commands.
- When the command is recognised, the system will either perform the function or ask to confirm the choice.
- When the system does not recognise the command, the system says “pardon.”
- If experiencing difficulty with the system recognising a command, confirm that the command is correct. Try saying the command clearly or wait for a brief moment after the tone.
- Background noise such as open windows, and very loud outside noises, even if the windows are closed, can cause voice commands to be misunderstood.
- To increase or decrease the voice volume during a voice recognition session, turn the volume switch of the radio, or press the volume steering wheel control. If the volume is adjusted during a voice recognition session, a Volume bar appears on the screen showing the voice volume level as it is being adjusted. This also changes the volume of the guidance prompts.
- When using navigation commands, take the time to become familiar with the address. Long delays when giving the address can result in the system not recognising the address or routing to different location than intended.
- When providing the house number portion of the address, the system recognises both digit format and numerical text. An example would be to say, “3-0-0-1” or “Three Thousand One.”

Voice Recognition Help

To enter the help playback session, clearly speak one of the help commands.

Help: The system plays back more specific help commands such as Radio Settings for the user to choose from.

Radio: Use this command to learn about how to select a band (AM or FM), and how to change radio stations by speaking frequency numbers.

Phone: Use this command to learn about how to dial, pair a device, or delete a device.

My Media: Use this command to learn how to play specific tracks, artists, albums, devices connected to the USB port, or to change sources.

Settings: Use this command to learn about how to turn Verbose on or off, or set the language.

Voice Recognition Commands

The following list shows the voice commands available for the infotainment system with a brief description of each. The commands are listed with the optional words in parentheses. To use the voice commands, see the previous instructions.

Radio Commands

Tune AM, Tune FM, Tune Pandora, Tune Stitcher: Instructs the system to go to the specific band and the last station.

Tune AM (frequency) or Tune FM (frequency): Instructs the system to go to the specific station.

Thumbs Up: Instructs the system to give the current song or station a thumbs up in Pandora or Stitcher.

Thumbs Down: Instructs the system to give the current song or station a thumbs down in Pandora or Stitcher.

Phone Commands

Dial or Call (phone number or contact): Instructs the system to start a phone call. For example, say “Dial 1234 5678.” To call a phone book contact, say “Dial” or “Call,” say the name and location, and then say “Dial.” For example, say “Call John at Home” or “Call John at Work.” If a number is not recognised, the first number in the list will be called.

Pair or Connect: Instructs the system to begin pairing a device.

Digit Dial: Instructs the system to dial a phone number one digit at a time. After saying the digits, say “Dial.”

Redial or Redial Last Number: Instructs the system to dial the last phone number called.

Select Device or Change Phone: Instructs the system to switch to a different paired device. The device must be selected from the screen or using the TUNE/MENU switch.

Delete Device: Instructs the system to delete a paired device.

My Media Commands

CD, AUX, USB, or Bluetooth Audio: Instructs the system to change the source.

Play CD: Instructs the system to play a CD. For example, say “Play CD.”

The following commands only apply to USB, iPod, and iPhone sources. They are supported after the device has been indexed.

Play Artist (artist name): Instructs the system to play songs by a specific artist. For example, say “Play Artist <artist name>.”

Play Album (album title): Instructs the system to play a specific album.

Play Song (song title): Instructs the system to play a specific song.

Play Genre (genre name): Instructs the system to play songs of a particular genre.

Search Artist (artist name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs by a specific artist. For example, say "Search Artist <artist name>.”

Search Composer (composer name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs by a specific composer. For example, say "Search Composer <composer name>.”

Search Album (album name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs by a specific album. For example, say "Search Album <album name>.”

Search Genre (genre name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs for a specific genre. For example, say "Search Genre <genre name>.”

Search Folder (folder name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs in a specific folder. For example, say "Search folder <folder name>.”

Search Playlist (playlist name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs in a specific playlist. For example, say "Search playlist <playlist name>.”

Search Audiobook (audiobook name): Instructs the system to show a list of all tracks in a specific audiobook. For example, say "Search audiobook <audiobook name>.”

Search Podcast (podcast name): Instructs the system to show a list of all tracks in a specific podcast. For example, say "Search podcast <podcast name>.”

More Like This: Instructs the system to create a playlist of tracks similar to the current track playing.

Settings Commands

Verbose (set) on (mode), Verbose (set) off (mode): Instructs the system to turn voice prompts on or off. When off, this feature turns off voice prompts.

List Devices: Instructs the system to give a list of devices to use.

Other Commands

Goodbye: Instructs the system to end a phone call or voice recognition.

Cancel: Instructs the system to cancel an action.

Go Back, Back, Previous: Instructs the system to go back to a prior menu.

Main Menu: Instructs the system to go to the main menu.

Yes, Yep, Yup, Ya, Sure, Right, Correct, OK, Positive, You Got it, Probably, You Bet: These can be used to say “Yes.”

No, Nope, Na, No way, Wrong, Incorrect, Negative, Not really, No I said, No I Did Not, No I Do Not: These can be used to say “No.”

Next Page, Page Down: Instructs the system to scroll forward one page in a list.

Previous Page, Page Up: Instructs the system to scroll back one page in a list.

Navigation Commands

The vehicle may have Navigation.

To activate the navigation voice recognition:

1. Press ✆ / 🎤 on the steering wheel. The audio system mutes. A voice prompt says, “Please say a command.” Wait until the tone is heard before speaking.

   If there is no tone, make sure the volume is turned up.

   While voice recognition is active, the system displays a symbol in the top right of the screen.
2. Clearly speak the command “Navigation.”
3. Clearly speak one of the commands in this section.

The following commands only apply once the Navigation command is given.

Address or Destination: Allows an address to be stated as a one-shot method. The system will recognise the address if stated all at once or say a city centre. An example is to say, “191 Salmon Street, Port Melbourne” or “Port Melbourne.”

Directed Address: Allows an address to be stated one step at a time. The format will be City/Suburb, Street, then House Number.

Intersection: Allows an Intersection to be stated as the destination. The format will be City/Suburb, Street, then Junction.

Home: Instructs the system to start guidance to address saved as My Home.

Contact: When a phone is paired to the system, which contains Address Information stored for contacts, the address associated with that contact can become a route. If the system cannot resolve the address, an error displays.

Points of Interest or POI: Allows a Point of Interest to be stated as a destination. Become familiar with the POI categories and sub-categories in the system by

pressing Destination from the Home Page or DEST from the faceplate, then selecting Point of Interest. POI commands for Along Route and Around Destination will be available if route guidance is active.

Add Waypoint: Allows addition of individual waypoints or the destination. The system will ask for the choice of entry method to continue. An example is to say, “POI Along Route” or “Intersection.”

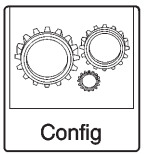
Delete Waypoint: When guidance is active, this command allows the deletion of individual waypoints or the destination. If guidance is not active the system will indicate the destination list is empty.

Where Am I?, My Location, or Current Position: Instructs the system to give the current position of the vehicle.

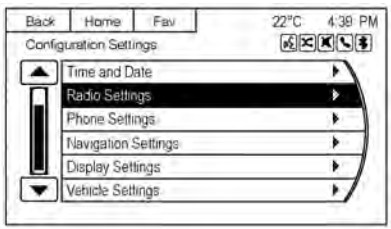
Help: The system plays back more specific help commands associated with Navigation or a Navigation sub-feature.

Settings

The Configuration Menu is used to adjust features and preferences, such as Sound, Radio, Nav (Navigation), Display, or Time Settings.



1. Touch the Config screen button on the Home Page or press the CONFIG button.

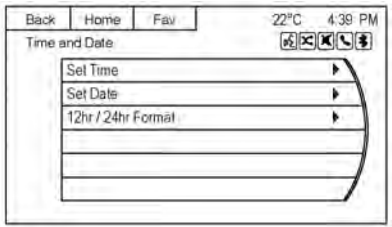


2. Touch the scroll bar until the desired option displays. Select the desired settings to change.

Languages

Note: English is the only available language.

Time and Date



Select Time and Date to display the Time and Date Settings menu.

Set Time: Touch the + or − to increase or decrease the Hours and Minutes displayed on the clock.

Set Date: Touch the + or − to increase or decrease the year, month and day.

12hr/24hr Format: Touch to select 12 hour or 24 hour time format.

Touch the Back screen button to save the adjustments.

Radio Settings

Touch the Config button on the Home Page or press the CONFIG button to enter the menu options. Rotate the TUNE/MENU switch or touch the scroll bar to scroll through the available options. Press the TUNE/MENU switch or touch Radio Settings to display the radio settings menu. Select this feature to make changes for Auto Volume Control, radio information displayed, Startup Volume and Number of Favourite Pages.

The Radio Settings are:

Auto Volume: Select OFF, Low, Medium, or High sensitivity to automatically adjust the volume to minimise the effects of unwanted background noise that can result from changing road surfaces, driving speeds, or open windows. This feature works best at lower volume settings where background noise is typically louder than the sound system volume.

Gracenote Options: Touch to enable/disable Normalisation used to improve voice recognition and media groupings. See *CD Player on page 7-27*, *USB on page 7-30*, *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-37*, and *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-37*.

Startup Volume: Touch to set the maximum volume level for startup that will be used even if a higher volume had been set when the radio was turned off.

Number of Favourite Pages: Touch to select the number of FAV pages to be displayed.

Software Version Menu: Touch to display information about the system and software.

Phone Settings

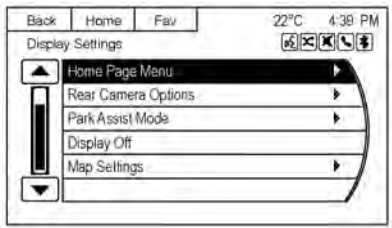
See *Bluetooth on page 7-66* in the “Phone” section for more information on phone settings.

Navigation Settings

See *Configure Menu on page 7-53*.

Display Settings

Touch the Config button on the Home Page or touch the CONFIG button, then select Display Settings from the list.



The following options may display:

Home Page Menu: Touch to customise the first page of the Home Page.

Rear Camera Options: Touch to adjust the rear camera options.

Park Assist Mode: Select to choose the default display as the rear-view camera, or the park assist graphic, when selecting reverse gear.

Display Off: Touch to turn off the display. The display will return when any buttons are pressed or the screen is touched.

Map Settings: Select to enter the submenu to change Automatic Zoom, enable Speed Limit display on map, and change Map Display settings.

- **Map Display:** Touch to change the screen background.

  To change the overall brightness setting for the display, use the vehicle interior lighting instrument panel illumination control.

  - The Automatic setting adjusts the screen background automatically depending on the exterior lighting conditions.
  - The Day setting brightens the map background.
  - The Night setting darkens the map background.

- **Speed Limits:** Select to display the posted speed limit on the map, when available.

Vehicle Settings

See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-30*.

Bluetooth Phone/ Devices

Bluetooth

Overview

For vehicles equipped with Bluetooth® capability, the system can interact with many mobile phones and devices, allowing:

- Placing and receiving hands-free calls.
- Sharing of the mobile phone's address book or contact list with the vehicle. The phone book will only display when that phone is connected.
- Placing outgoing calls by voice recognition.

The system can be used while the infotainment system is on. The range of the Bluetooth® system can be up to 9.1 m. The radio can connect to most Bluetooth®-enabled

phones. Available features and functions may be dependent on the device.

Bluetooth® Controls

Use the buttons on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the Bluetooth® system.

Steering Wheel Controls

/ (Push to Talk): Press to answer incoming calls and start voice recognition.

/ (Mute/End Call): Press to end a call, decline an incoming call, or cancel voice recognition.

+ − (Volume): Press + or − to increase or decrease the volume.

Infotainment System Controls

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Overview on page 7-3*.

/ (Phone/Mute): Press to enter the Phone main menu. Press and hold to mute or unmute.

Voice Recognition

The voice recognition system uses commands to control the system and dial phone numbers.

When using voice recognition:

- The system may not recognise voice commands if there is too much background noise.
- A tone sounds to indicate that the system is ready for a voice command. Wait for the tone and then speak.
- Speak clearly in a calm and natural voice.

See *Voice Recognition on page 7-59*.

Audio System

Sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Use the /VOL switch during a call to change the volume level. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. The system maintains a minimum volume level.

Bluetooth® Audio

See *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-37*.

Pairing with Infotainment Controls

A Bluetooth®-enabled mobile phone must be paired and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See your mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth® functions before pairing the mobile phone.

Pairing Information

- A Bluetooth®-enabled phone and an audio playback device can be paired to the system at the same time.
- Up to five devices can be paired to the Bluetooth® system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the mobile

phone changes or the mobile phone is deleted from the system.

- Only one paired mobile phone can be connected to the Bluetooth® system at a time.
- If multiple paired mobile phones are within range of the system, the radio will connect to the first phone in the list or to the phone that was previously connected.

Pairing a Phone/Device

1. Press CONFIG or touch Config on the Home Page or press ✆ / ⊠.
2. Select Phone Settings.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Pair Device. The infotainment system displays "Pairing Code: XXXX". Confirm or enter number:" If the device supports a four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN), it will display. The PIN is used in Step 6.
5. Start the pairing process on the mobile phone to be paired to the vehicle. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide.
6. Locate and select the device named Mylink in the list on the mobile phone. Follow the instructions on the mobile phone to enter the PIN provided in Step 4, or to confirm the six-digit code matches. The system recognises the new connected phone after the pairing process is complete.
7. If the phone prompts to accept connection or allow phone book download, select always accept and allow. The phone book may not be available if not accepted. Some phones will put connection request or phone book request in a pull down task bar at the top of the screen. Drag down the task bar and look for connection/phone book request and accept.
8. Repeat to pair additional phones.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones/Devices

1. Press CONFIG, touch Config on the Home Page and select Phone, or press ✆ / ⊠.
2. Select Phone Settings.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Device List.

Deleting a Paired Phone/Device

1. Press CONFIG, touch Config on the Home Page and select Phone, or press ✆ / ⊠.
2. Select Phone Settings.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Device List.
5. Select the phone to delete, select Delete and follow the screen prompts.

Connecting to a Different Phone

To connect to a different phone, the new phone must be in the vehicle and available to be connected to the Bluetooth® system before the process is started.

1. Press CONFIG, touch Config on the Home Page and select Phone, or press / .
2. Select Phone Settings.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Device List.
5. Select the new phone to connect to and follow the screen prompts.

Pairing with Voice Recognition

A Bluetooth®-enabled mobile phone must be paired and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth® functions before pairing the mobile phone.

Pairing a Phone

1. Press / . The system responds “Please Say a Command,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Pair.” The system responds with “Please search for Bluetooth® devices on your phone, select your vehicle, confirm or enter the PIN number provided on the screen.”
3. Start the search for Bluetooth® devices on the phone. Then select the device and follow the instructions on the phone by either entering the four-digit PIN or confirming the six-digit passcode. The PIN is used in Step 4.
4. Locate and select the device named MyLink in the list on the mobile phone. Follow the instructions on the mobile phone to enter the PIN provided in Step 3 or to confirm the six-digit code matches. The system responds “successfully paired.”
5. Repeat Steps 1 to 4 to pair additional phones.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

The system can list all mobile phones paired to it. If a paired mobile phone is also connected to the vehicle, the system responds with “is connected” after that phone name.

1. Press / . The system responds “Please Say a Command,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “List Device.”

Deleting a Paired Phone

If the phone name to delete is unknown, see “Listing All Paired and Connected Phones.”

1. Press / . The system responds “Please Say a Command,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Delete Device.”

3. The system responds with: “To delete a device, please select its name from the list.” Select the device to delete on the display and it will be removed.

To cancel this command, press / on the steering wheel control or press the BACK button.

Connecting to a Different Phone or Device

To connect to a different mobile phone, the system looks for the next available mobile phone. Depending on the mobile phone to be connected, this command may need to be repeated.

1. Press / . The system responds “Please Say a Command,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Change Phone.”
   - To select a device, press the name on the display.
   - If another mobile phone is not found, the original phone remains connected.

Making a Call Using Phone Book and Infotainment Controls

For mobile phones that support the phone book feature, the Bluetooth® system can use the contacts stored on the mobile phone to make calls. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide or contact the wireless provider to find out if this feature is supported.

When a mobile phone supports the phone book feature, the Phone Book and Call Lists menus are automatically available.

The Phone Book menu allows access to the phone book stored in the mobile phone to make a call.

The Call Lists menu allows access to the phone numbers from the Incoming Calls, Outgoing Calls, and Missed Calls menus on the mobile phone to make a call.

The radio will display the first 1,000 contacts and the phone numbers for each contact including Home, Work, Mobile, and Other.

To make a call using the Phone Book menu:

1. Press / or touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phone Book.
3. Select the letter group of the phone book entry to scroll through the list of names/numbers.
4. Select the name.
5. Select the number to call.

To make a call using the Call Lists menu:

1. Press / or touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Call Lists.
3. Select the Incoming Calls, Outgoing Calls, or Missed Calls list.

4. Select the name or number to call.
5. Select Call.

Making a Call Using the Infotainment Controls

To make a call:

1. Press / or touch the Phone screen button.
2. Touch Enter number.
3. Enter the phone number.
4. Select OK to start dialling the number.

To make a call using voice recognition, see “Making a Call” under *Hands-Free Phone on page 7-75*.

Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

Using the Infotainment Controls

Rotate TUNE/MENU to “Answer” or “Decline” and press TUNE/MENU or touch Accept or Decline on the screen.

Using Steering Wheel Controls

Press / to answer or / to decline the call.

Call Waiting Using the Infotainment Controls

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth® phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

Switching Between Calls (Call Waiting Calls Only)

To switch between calls rotate and press TUNE/MENU and select Switch Call or touch Switch Call on the screen.

Call Waiting Using Steering Wheel Controls

Call waiting must be supported on the mobile phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier.

- Press / to answer an incoming call when another call is active. The original call is placed on hold.
- Press / again to return to the original call.
- To decline answering the incoming call, touch Decline on the screen or take no action.
- Press / to disconnect the current call and switch to the call on hold.

Conference Calling Using the Infotainment Controls

Conference calling and three-way calling must be supported on the Bluetooth® phone and enabled by

the wireless service carrier to work. This feature is only supported when the vehicle is not moving.

To start a conference while in a current call:

1. Select Enter Number.
2. Enter the phone number and select OK.
3. After the call has been placed, rotate TUNE/MENU and choose Merge Calls.
4. To add more callers to the conference call, repeat Steps 1 −3. The number of callers that can be added is limited by your wireless service carrier.

Ending a Call

Using the Infotainment Controls

Rotate and press TUNE/MENU to select Hang Up, or press Hang Up on the screen.

Using Steering Wheel Controls

Press / .

Muting a Call

During a call, all sounds from inside the vehicle can be muted so that the person on the other end of the call cannot hear them.

Using the Infotainment Controls

Rotate and press TUNE/MENU to select Mute Call. Select again to cancel mute.

Transferring a Call

Audio can be transferred between the Bluetooth® system and the mobile phone.

The mobile phone must be paired and connected with the Bluetooth® system before a call can be transferred.

To Transfer Audio from the Bluetooth® System to a Mobile Phone

During a call with the audio in the vehicle, touch the Transfer Call button on the screen or press and hold the / button on the steering wheel.

To Transfer Audio to the Bluetooth® System from a Mobile Phone

Use the audio transfer feature on the mobile phone. See your mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for more information. Touch the Transfer to Handset button on the screen or press and hold the / button on the steering wheel.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth® system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu-driven phone system.

Using the Infotainment Controls

1. Select Enter Number.
2. Select the digits on the screen then touch OK to send.

Text Messaging

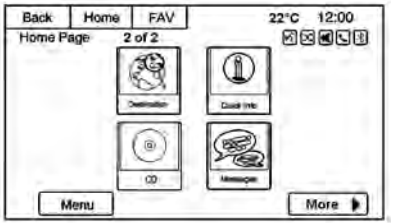
The infotainment system can display text messages, play back a message over the audio system, and send a predefined message reply.

Not all phones support all functions and work with Bluetooth.

The infotainment system only supports the receipt of SMS text messages. A request may need to be accepted on the phone or some phone settings may need to be changed to allow text messaging to function. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide.

The text messaging feature can also be initiated via voice recognition.

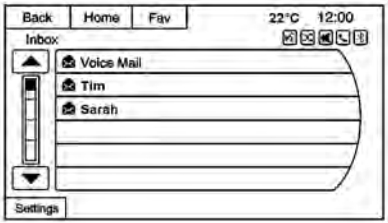
Using Text Messaging



1. Touch the Messages button on the Home Page or select Text Messages from the Phone main screen.

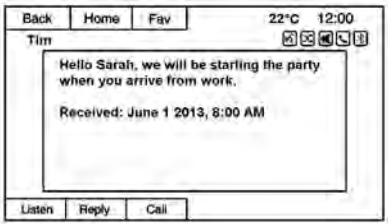
Note: iPhone: Ensure Show Notifications is ON in the paired MyLink settings on the phone.

Android: Accept and activate Message Access Profile (MAP) if requested.



2. Select a message for viewing. Viewing messages is only available while the vehicle is not in motion.

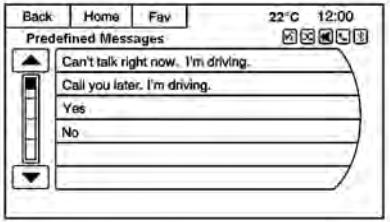
   Depending on the phone connected, either existing messages or messages as they are received are displayed.



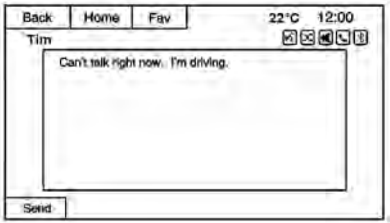
3. View the message. The message view screen is not available while the vehicle is in motion.

- Touch Listen to hear the message through the audio system.
- Touch Call to dial the contact or number associated with the text message. Not all phones allow calling the sender of the message and will result in not being able to select Call.
- Touch Reply to reply with a predefined message, to a text message that was received as an incoming message. Not all phones support the sending of messages.

Replying to Text Messages



1. Select the desired message from the display of predefined messages to send as the reply.



2. Touch Send to send the message.

   Alternatively, touch Back to cancel and return to the previous screen.

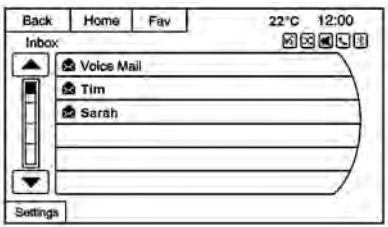
Incoming Text Messages

A pop-up screen is displayed when there is an incoming text message. The pop-up will remain on the screen until Dismiss is selected.

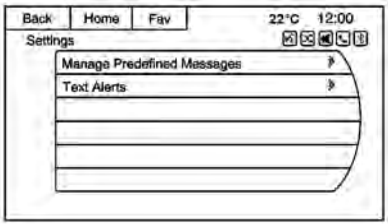
- Touch Listen to hear the message through the audio system.
- Touch View to view the message. The message view screen is not available while the vehicle is in motion.

- Touch Reply to reply to the text message using a predefined message.
- Touch Call to dial the contact or number associated with the text message.
- Touch Dismiss to close the pop-up incoming message screen.

Text Messaging Settings



In the Text Message Inbox, touch Settings to access the Text Message Settings menu.



- Touch Manage Predefined Messages to create a user defined message that can be used later to reply to a text message.

  Use the touch screen keyboard to enter the message.

  Touch Done to store.
- To delete a predefined message, select the message and touch Yes to confirm.
- Touch Text Alerts to choose the alert behaviour for incoming text messages:
  - Text alert with tone
  - Tone only
  - Off

Hands-Free Phone

Using Bluetooth® Voice Recognition

To use voice recognition, press the ✆ / button on the steering wheel. Use the commands below for the various voice features. For additional information, say “Help” while in a voice recognition menu.

Making a Call

Calls can be made using the following commands.

Dial or Call: These commands can be used interchangeably to dial a phone number.

Digit Dial: This command allows a phone number to be dialed by entering the digits one at a time.

Re-dial: This command dials the last number used on the mobile phone.

Using the "Dial" or "Call" Command

To call a number:

1. Press ✆ / 🎙. The system responds "Please Say a Command," followed by a tone.
2. Say "Dial" or "Call."
3. Say the entire number without pausing. The system responds with the entered number.
4. Say "Dial" or "Call".

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

To call using a name tag:

1. Press ✆ / 🎙. The system responds "Please Say a Command," followed by a tone.
2. Say "Dial" or "Call" and then say the name tag. For example "Call John at Work."

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Using the "Digit Dial" Command

This allows a phone number to be dialed by entering the digits one at a time.

1. Press ✆ / 🎙. The system responds "Please Say a Command," followed by a tone.
2. Say "Digit Dial."
3. Say each digit, one at a time, to dial. After each digit is entered, the system repeats back the digit it heard followed by a tone. After the last digit has been entered, say "Dial."

If an unwanted number is repeated back, say "Clear" to clear the last number.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Using the "Re-dial" Command

1. Press ✆ / 🎙. The system responds "Please Say a Command," followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say "Re-dial." The system dials the last number called from the connected mobile phone.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Clearing the System

Unless information is deleted out of the vehicle Bluetooth® system, it will be retained. This includes phone pairing information. For directions on how to delete this information, see "Deleting a Paired Phone/ Device."

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems
Air Conditioning System 8-1

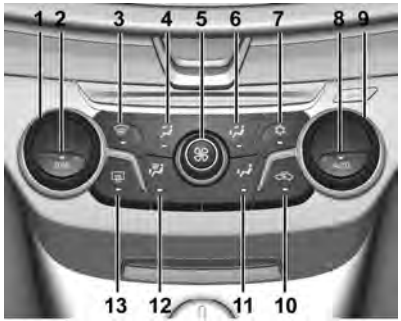
Air Vents
Adjustable Air Vents 8-6
Fixed Air Vents 8-7

Maintenance
Air Intake 8-7
Passenger Compartment Air Filter 8-7
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 8-7

Climate Control Systems

Air Conditioning System

The climate control panel is located in the centre of the dashboard.

Temperature settings for the driver and passenger can be adjusted independently.

Controls

1. Temperature control knob: passenger side
2. Zone button
3. Windscreen demister button
4. Face mode button
5. Fan speed knob
6. Bi-level mode button
7. Air conditioning on/off button
8. Automatic climate control button
9. Temperature control knob: driver side
10. Recirculation on/off button
11. Floor mode button
12. Floor and windscreen demist (blend) mode button
13. Rear window demister button

Temperature Controls

- Rotate the temperature control knobs clockwise (warmer) or anticlockwise (cooler).
- The settings for each side appear on the temperature control knob displays and the infotainment display.

- Turning the temperature control knob clockwise past 29°C, will show **HI** (hottest).

  Turning the temperature control knob anticlockwise past 16°C, will show **LO** (coolest).
- A temperature setting between 22°C and 24°C is recommended as an initial starting point for comfort.

Single and Dual Zone

Press **ZONE** to synchronise the driver and passenger temperatures.

Driver has control will be displayed on the infotainment display and the system will operate in Single-Zone mode.

In this mode the system temperature is adjusted using the driver side temperature control knob.

Dual-Zone mode

Dual-Zone mode allows different temperatures to be set for the left and right sides.

Enter Dual-Zone mode by adjusting the passenger side temperature control knob when in Single-Zone mode.

Automatic Operation

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Press **AUTO** if the LED on the Automatic Climate Control button is not illuminated.
3. Use the temperature control knobs to adjust the temperature.
4. Adjust the angle of the air vents for personal comfort.
5. Allow the system to stabilise for a few minutes.

Note:

- The automatic climate control setting does not change when the ignition is turned off or on.
- The automatic climate control sets the fan speed automatically.

It is not necessary to set a cooler or hotter temperature to ensure fast cooling or heating.

Leave the system in automatic operation to:

- Turn the air conditioning on and off.
- Vary the temperature of the air entering the cabin.
- Switch between recirculate or fresh air.
- Vary the fan speed.
- Alter air delivery mode vent selection.

Note: The automatic climate control system may not work properly if one or more dashboard vents are closed.

Manual Operation

Fan speed

- Rotate ֍ to increase or decrease the fan speed.
- The fan speed appears on the infotainment display.
- Pressing ֍ will turn the system on/off.

Note:

- When manually adjusting the fan speed, the system will revert to semi-automatic operation.
- To return to automatic operation, press **AUTO**.

Mode

Press the mode buttons to switch between the following positions:

- Face mode directs air to the dashboard vents.
- Bi-level mode directs air to the dashboard vents and most of the remaining air to the floor vents.

  Cooler air is directed to the upper outlets and warmer air to the floor vents.
- Floor mode directs most of the air to the floor vents, some to the outer dashboard vents, windscreen and side window demist vents.
- Floor and windscreen demist (blend) mode directs air between the windscreen and floor vents, some to the outer dashboard vents and side window demist vents.

  The selected air delivery mode settings appear on the infotainment display.

Note:

- Manual selection of any air delivery mode will revert the system to semi-automatic operation.
- To return to automatic operation, press **AUTO**.

Auto

- Pressing **AUTO** switches the system to automatic climate control.
- **AUTO** appears on the infotainment display.

Note: The **AUTO** icons on the infotainment display are not displayed when the system is operating manually.

Air Conditioning

- Press to switch the air conditioning on and off.
- **On** appears on the infotainment display when switched on.
- **Off** appears on the infotainment display when switched off.

Note:

- When , or is selected, the air conditioning is automatically switched on to improve defogging performance and remove moisture from the air.

- Switch the air conditioning on for at least 5 to 10 minutes once every 2 weeks to lubricate the system, even in winter.
- Air conditioning cannot be turned off in demist mode.
- Air conditioning may switch off during heavy acceleration, towing or when there is abnormal system pressure or very cold outside temperatures.

Recirculation

- Press to switch the air intake between recirculated air and outside air.
- appears on the infotainment display when operating in recirculation mode.

Note:

- Recirculation reuses interior air so is not recommended for long periods of time.

  If left on, fresh air is let into the cabin periodically.
- Do not use recirculation if occupants are smoking.
- Recirculation cannot be activated in demist mode.
- **AUTO** is displayed when the system is automatically controlling the mixture of fresh and recirculated air for optimal performance.

Windscreen demister

- Press to demist the windscreen and front passenger side windows.
- Air conditioning and fresh air mode are switched on automatically.
- appears on the infotainment display.
- Press again to turn the demister off and revert to the previously selected mode.

Rear window demister

- Press to turn the rear demister on or off.
- An LED on the button indicates that the demister is on.
- The rear demister switches off automatically.

Off

- Press to switch the system off/on.
- When the system is off, only the rear window demister and recirculation mode can be used.

Regular operation

Adjusting the temperature

When the climate control system has stabilised, and if passengers are not comfortable, adjust settings one degree at a time.

Quick cool down

When entering the vehicle on a hot day, open the windows for a short time to allow the hot air to escape.

Ignition keys

For vehicles equipped with personal identity keys, pressing sets the climate control to the last adjustments used for that key. See “Personal identity keys” under *Keys on page 2-1*.

Automatic transmission

If the vehicle is stopped for a long time in hot weather with the engine running and the air conditioning operating, move the shift lever to **N** or **P**.

Hissing

A slight hissing sound when the air conditioning switches off is normal.

Water

Water condensation can leave traces of clear water on the ground underneath the vehicle.

Unsealed roads (prevention of dust entry)

- When following another vehicle on unsealed roads and the dust is airborne, select recirculation .
- If the dust is not airborne select fresh air and set the fan to high speed to help prevent dust entry.
- Ensure in both cases that all windows are closed.
- Do not use recirculation for long periods of time.

Sensors

The automatic climate control uses sensors to maintain temperatures:

- The sunlight sensor is located on top of the dashboard. See *Instrument Panel Overview on page 5-3*.

  It monitors solar radiation when operating in AUTO mode, adjusting temperature, fan speed and air delivery mode.

  Cooler air may be supplied to the side of the vehicle facing the sun.

  Recirculation mode will be activated as necessary.

  Do not cover the sensor as the system may not work properly.

- The outside temperature sensor is located in front of the radiator and relies on air moving across it.

  It can be affected by radiant heat when the vehicle is stationary.

  To prevent false temperature readings, the displayed temperature will not update at low vehicle speeds.

  If the vehicle has been switched off for less than 4 hours, the temperature at start up will be recalled from previous operation.

Switching climate control off

If climate control is switched off:

- Background noises may still be heard.
- Recirculation and the rear window demister can still be used .

Cigarette smoke

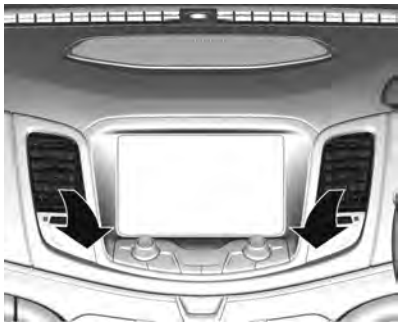
Do not use recirculation if occupants are smoking.

Air Vents

Adjustable Air Vents

The dashboard vents can be adjusted up or down and left or right to allow directional air flow.

Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the vanes.



The vents have shut-off doors to adjust the air volume.

Fixed Air Vents

The demister and floor-level outlets are fixed. They direct air to the windscreen, side windows and feet.

Maintenance

Air Intake

Outside air is drawn into the vehicle through the opening between the bonnet and the windscreen, unless recirculation has been selected.

Keep the area clear of debris.

Passenger Compartment Air Filter

Pollen/dust filter

A passenger compartment air filter may be fitted to filter contaminants such as pollen and dust from entering the vehicle. This can be fitted by a Holden Dealer. See the Service and Warranty Booklet for the maintenance schedule.

Air Conditioning Regular Operation

Switch air conditioning on for at least 5 to 10 minutes once every 2 weeks to lubricate the system, even in winter.

✍ NOTES

Driving and Operating

Driving Information
Driving Environment 9-2

Starting and Operating
New vehicle running-in 9-2
Ignition Positions 9-4
Starting the Engine 9-7
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 9-7
Parking 9-8

Automatic Transmission
Automatic Transmission 9-8
Transmission Display 9-8
Shift Lever 9-9

Manual Transmission
Manual Transmission 9-13

Brakes
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 9-14
Electric Parking Brake 9-15
Brake Assist 9-16
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 9-17

Ride Control Systems
Traction Control System (TCS) 9-17
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 9-18
Competitive Driving Mode (Redline) 9-20

Cruise Control
Cruise Control 9-21

Object Detection Systems
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 9-23
Parking Assist 9-25
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 9-29
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 9-31
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 9-33

Driver Assistance Systems
Advanced Parking Assist 9-36

Fuel
Fuel 9-39
Recommended Fuel 9-40
Filling the Tank 9-41

Towing
Trailer Towing 9-42
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) 9-47

Conversions and Add-Ons
Add-On Electrical Equipment 9-47

Driving Information

Driving Environment

Before entering the vehicle

Check that windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.

Visually check tyre inflation. Check tyre pressures weekly.

Before driving off

1. Close and secure doors.
2. Position the seat for comfortable driving.
3. Adjust rear view mirrors.
4. Fasten seat belts.
5. Check that warning indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on. See *Instrument Cluster on page 5-12*.

Starting and Operating

New vehicle running-in

Use the following precautions to improve performance:

- For the first 1,000 km:

  Do not make full throttle starts.

  Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.

  Do not drive at any one constant speed.

  Use moderate acceleration in lower gears.

  Avoid vehicle speeds above 110 km/h.
- Between the first 1,000 km and 5,000 km, heavy acceleration in lower gears may be used.

  Vehicle speeds above 110 km/h should be limited to five minutes per use.
- Drivers must always obey locally posted speed limits.
- Avoid making hard stops for the first 350 km to avoid premature wear and early replacement of brakes.
- It is recommended that the new vehicle be driven for at least 1,500 km before towing. See “Running-in when towing” under *Trailer Towing on page 9-42*.

Brakes

Do not let the vehicle run down hills, or coast with the engine off as the power assistance does not operate.

Ensure that nothing is under the brake pedal which could limit their use, such as poorly fitting floor mats.

Continuous or heavy use of brakes will shorten the life of the brake pads.

Power steering

The power steering fitted to the vehicle has been designed to reduce steering effort.

Do not turn and hold the steering wheel in the fully turned position when stationary.

If power steering is not working the vehicle can still be steered. Have the steering repaired as soon as possible by a Holden Dealer.

Mobile phones and CB radios

Use mobile phones and CB equipment that utilise an antenna fitted to the outside of the vehicle whenever possible.

If using mobile phones or CBs with an integrated antenna inside the vehicle, avoid using near the dashboard area, as some functions may be affected.

Loading the vehicle

Loading the vehicle changes handling when driving. See *Vehicle Weight on page 12-5*.

Loose articles

Do not leave loose articles or luggage in the passenger compartment. Firmly secure in the load area.

⚠ Warning

Portable gas cylinders can leak, creating a risk of fire or explosion. As a precaution, ensure adequate ventilation when carrying gas cylinders. They must be restrained from rolling around and where possible, placed in the load area of the vehicle. It is recommended that if gas cylinders are frequently transported that a purpose-built carrying compartment be used. Ensure any transportation of gas cylinders complies with the applicable regulations.

Tyre grip

Tyre grip decreases when water, snow, ice, gravel or other materials are on the road. Adjust your driving to the road conditions:

- Reduce speeds during wet conditions.
- Replace tyres when tread wear indicators are visible. See *Tread Depth on page 10-38*.
- Regularly check that tyres are properly inflated. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-36*.

Water crossing

Before crossing water, switch off the air conditioning.

Crossing deep water can damage the engine:

- Avoid crossing water deeper than 175 mm.
- Limit vehicle speed to a walking pace.

To dry out the brakes:

- Ensure there is a clear area ahead.
- Lightly apply the brakes.
- Maintain a slow forward speed until performance returns to normal.

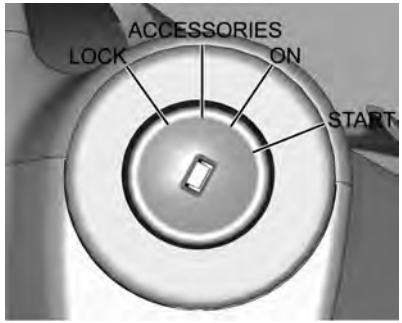
Ignition Positions

⚠ Warning

Do not switch the engine off while the vehicle is moving as there will not be any power assist for the brakes.

Never remove the key while the vehicle is moving, as this will lock the steering.

The vehicle may have an ignition lock/switch.



LOCK: When the key is in the LOCK position, some electrical accessories and the engine are off.

The key can only be inserted and removed from the LOCK position.

The engine is automatically disabled shortly after removing the key from the ignition.

The steering wheel is automatically locked when the key is removed.

To release the steering lock, re-insert the key and turn it towards the front of the vehicle. If still locked, turn the steering wheel slightly to the right or left while turning the key towards the front of the vehicle.

ACCESSORIES: When the key is in the ACCESSORIES position, the audio system and wipers operate.

ON: When the key is in the ON position, the engine is ready to start and all electrical systems are active.

Warning lamps will illuminate. See *Instrument Cluster on page 5-12*.

Do not leave the switch in the ON position for a long time, unless the engine is running, otherwise the vehicle's battery will discharge.

START: Turn the key to the START position momentarily and then release.

The engine starts automatically.

The key returns to the ON position when released.

Note: If the vehicle stalls after 5 seconds, return the key to the LOCK position. Slowly rotate the

key to the START position. If the security warning light flashes, contact a Holden Dealer.

⚠ Warning

Do not switch the engine off while the vehicle is moving as there will not be any power assist for the brakes.

Engine Start/Stop Button

⚠ Warning

Do not switch the engine off while the vehicle is moving as there will not be any power assist for the brakes.

The vehicle may have an electronic keyless ignition with pushbutton start.

Pressing the button cycles it through three modes:

- ACC/ACCESSORY
- ON/RUN/START
- Stopping the Engine/OFF

The transmitter must be in the vehicle for the system to operate. If the pushbutton start is not working, the vehicle may be near a strong radio antenna signal causing interference to the keyless access system. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-4* for more information.

Stopping the Engine/OFF (No Indicator Lights): When the vehicle is stopped, press the ENGINE START/STOP button once to turn the engine off.

The ignition will turn off, and Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-7* for more information.

Note: Automatic transmission vehicles — The vehicle must be in P (Park) for the ignition to turn off.

If the vehicle is not in P (Park), the ignition will return to ACC/ ACCESSORY and display the message SHIFT TO PARK in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Transmission Messages on page 5-29* for more information. When the vehicle is shifted into P (Park), the ignition system will switch to OFF.

Do not turn the engine off when the vehicle is moving. This will cause a loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems.

If the vehicle must be shut off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to N (Neutral), firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop.
4. Shift to P (Park) and press the ENGINE START/STOP button once to turn the engine off.
5. Set the parking brake. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-15*.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over, and must be shut off while driving, press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for longer than two seconds, or press twice in five seconds.

ACC/ACCESSORY (Amber Indicator Light): This mode allows you to use some electrical accessories when the engine is off.

With the ignition off, pressing the button once without the brake pedal applied will place the ignition system in ACC/ACCESSORY.

The ignition will switch from ACC/ACCESSORY to OFF after five minutes to prevent battery rundown.

ON/RUN/START (Green Indicator Light): This mode is for driving and starting. With the ignition off, and the clutch (manual) or brake (auto) pedal applied, pressing the button once will place the ignition system in ON/RUN/START. Once engine cranking begins, release the button. Engine cranking will continue until the engine starts. See *Starting the Engine on page 9-7* for more information. The ignition will then remain in ON/RUN.

The vehicle may have an electric steering column lock. The lock is activated when the ignition is switched to off and either front door is opened. A sound may be heard as the lock actuates or releases. The steering column lock may not release with the wheels turned off centre, which may be restricting the lock mechanism. If this happens, the vehicle may not start, and a DIC message will be displayed. Perform the following steps:

1. Remove your foot from the brake pedal (auto) or clutch (manual).
2. Wait for approximately 6 seconds (without touching the ENGINE START/STOP button).
3. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button to turn the ignition off.

Note: OFF is when the ENGINE START/STOP button is not illuminated.

4. Turn the steering wheel to release the load on the steering column lock.
5. Depress the brake pedal (auto) or clutch pedal (manual) and press the ENGINE START/STOP button to start the engine. The green indicator will illuminate.
6. If the vehicle fails to start, repeat steps 1 to 5, however this time reverse the direction of steering wheel in step 4.

If this does not work, see your dealer.

Service Only Mode

This power mode is available for service and diagnostics, and to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emission inspection purposes. With the vehicle off, and the clutch (manual) or brake (auto) pedal not applied, pressing and holding the button for more than five seconds will place the vehicle in Service Only Mode. The instruments and audio systems will operate as they do in ON/RUN, but the vehicle will not be able to be driven. The engine will not start in Service Only Mode. Push the button again to turn the vehicle off.

Starting the Engine

1. Apply the park brake. Release it only after starting the engine and you are ready to drive off.
2. Automatic transmission: Move the shift lever to position **P** or **N**. The engine will not start if the shift lever is in any other position.

   Manual transmission: Push the clutch pedal to the floor, move the shift lever to the neutral position then start the engine.
3. Turn the key to the START position momentarily and release it. The engine starts automatically. The key automatically returns to the ON position.

Keyless start: When the ignition is off and the clutch (manual) or brake (auto) pedal is applied, press the ENGINE START/STOP button once and release when engine cranking begins. Engine cranking will continue until the engine starts.

Note:

- Manual transmission: The clutch must be pushed to the floor while turning the key, or the vehicle cannot be started.
- Do not press the accelerator pedal while starting the engine.
- Do not subject the engine to full throttle acceleration or high speeds until it has reached normal operating temperature. Premature engine wear or damage may result.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The power windows will operate when the key is in the ON or ACCESSORIES positions.

Once the ignition is turned off, the RAP allows the power windows to continue to operate for up to 10 minutes. If a door is opened during this time, they will be deactivated.

Note: The audio system will be deactivated only if the driver's door is opened.

Parking

1. Apply the park brake.
2. Automatic transmission: Select position **P**.

   Manual transmission: If facing uphill or on flat ground, select 1st gear. If facing downhill, select reverse gear.
3. Shut all windows.
4. Turn the ignition off and remove the key.
5. Press the button on the key to lock all doors and to arm the alarm system. See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-16*.

Note: The engine fan may keep going for several minutes after the ignition has been turned off. This is normal.

⚠ Warning

Be careful where you park or drive. As with any vehicle, do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where combustible materials such as dry grass or leaves can come in contact with a hot exhaust system.

Exhaust gases are hazardous, especially if they concentrate in closed rooms.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space such as a closed garage or underground car park.

Automatic Transmission

Press the select button on the front of the shift lever to move into any position.

Transmission Display

When the shift lever position is changed, the lever position is indicated on the bottom of the DIC.

Shift Lever

The engine will not start unless the shift lever is in position **P** or **N**.

P: In park position, the wheels are locked. Apply the park brake before leaving the vehicle.

⚠ Caution

Selecting position **P** while the vehicle is still moving can cause damage to the transmission.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Do not press the accelerator pedal with the brakes on in any gear except position **P** or **N**. This will overheat the transmission.

R: Place in reverse gear only when the vehicle is stationary. The reverse lamps will illuminate.

N: In neutral the vehicle can be moved without the engine running, e.g. to be towed or pushed.

⚠ Warning

To prevent the vehicle from moving when position **N** is selected, always apply the park brake, press the foot brake or use suitable chocks to block the wheels.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not coast the vehicle in position **N** – this decreases your control and ability to accelerate quickly in an emergency.

D: Used for general driving. The transmission automatically selects the appropriate gear according to the current load and driving conditions.

+/-: For sport shift mode, move the shift lever to position **D** then push to the left.

While in sport shift mode, move the shift lever to the **+** or **–** position to enable A/S mode.

To shift up a gear, briefly pull the lever rearwards (+) and release it. To shift down a gear, briefly push the lever forwards (–) and release it. See “Active Select (A/S) mode” later in this section.

Note:

- It is recommended that cruise control in normal shift mode be used for towing.
- A/S mode may also be used under light load conditions.
- A small increase in engine speed may occur during some downshifts.

⚠ Caution

Do not use the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle stationary on an uphill gradient. Use the brakes.

Driving on gradients

When driving on a grade, the transmission may hold the current gear. Upshift or downshift to assist in maintaining vehicle speed and/or reduce brake wear.

If the road levels out and/or the accelerator is pressed, the transmission will shift until the appropriate gear is reached.

A/S mode may be switched to override this feature.

Sport shift mode

Sport shift mode can be selected where maximum responsiveness is required.

When operated in sport shift mode, the transmission will delay upshifts and allow earlier downshifts.

In addition, the transmission can sense enthusiastic driving, at which point it may delay upshifting and downshift earlier when braking. This is designed to maximise vehicle performance.

To activate sport shift mode:

1. Move the shift lever to position **D**.
2. Push the shift lever to the left.

   Sport Mode On is displayed on the DIC.

   Do not move the shift lever to **+** or **–**, otherwise A/S mode will be enabled.
3. To return to normal shift mode, move the shift lever right, to position **D**.

   Sport Mode Off is displayed on the DIC.

On the bottom of the display, **S** appears as long as sport shift mode is selected.

Normal shift mode

Normal shift mode is recommended for normal or freeway driving, as it provides optimum fuel economy.

When the shift lever is moved to position **D**, normal shift mode is selected.

Active Select (A/S) mode

A/S mode allows gears to be selected manually.

It can also provide engine-braking by selecting the appropriate lower gear on a steep downhill grade.

To enable A/S mode:

1. Move the shift lever to position **D**.
2. Push the lever to the left.
3. Shift to the required gear:

   To shift up a gear, briefly pull the lever rearwards (**+**) and release it.

   To shift down a gear, briefly push the lever forwards (**–**) and release it.

After changing the gear and releasing the shift lever, it returns to the centre position on the left side of the selector.

On the bottom of the display, **M** and the currently selected gear appears as long as A/S mode is selected.

Note:

- The transmission will shift to a selected gear only if the engine speed is within a suitable range.

  If not suitable, **Shift Denied** will be displayed and the transmission will not shift gears.

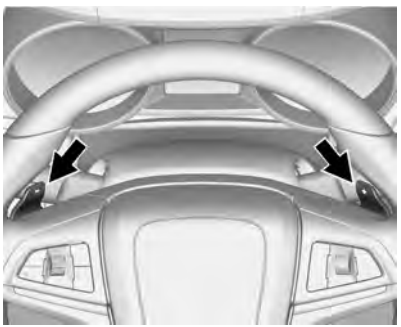
  Continuing to hold the lever in the **–** position will select the requested gear as soon as the engine speed decreases to the allowed speed for that gear.
- If the engine speed becomes too low for the currently selected gear, the transmission will automatically shift down, even though A/S mode is still selected.
- While in A/S mode, 2nd or 3rd gear starts (V8) or 2nd gear starts (V6) can be selected from a standing start. This is useful for gentle acceleration on slippery surfaces.

To disable A/S mode and return to normal shift mode, push the shift lever to the right, to position **D** (on the bottom of the display, **D** is displayed).

To disable A/S mode and return to Sport shift mode, hold the shift lever in the **+** position for more than 1 second (on the bottom of the display, **S** is displayed).

Shift Paddles

The vehicle may have shift paddles.



When A/S mode is enabled, the paddles can be used to shift to the required gear.

To shift up a gear, briefly pull the + (Plus) paddle toward the steering wheel and release it.

To shift down a gear, briefly pull the — (Minus) paddle toward the steering wheel and release it.

Temporary Active Select (A / S) Mode

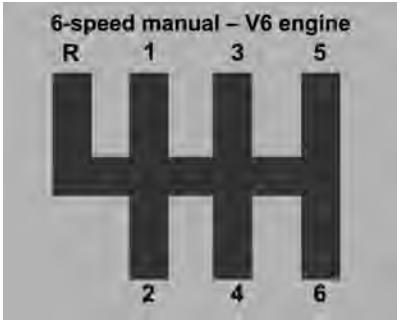
A/S mode can also be operated from D (Drive) using the steering wheel paddles only. With the vehicle in motion, briefly pulling the + (Plus) or — (Minus) steering wheel paddles at any time will engage Temporary A/S mode.

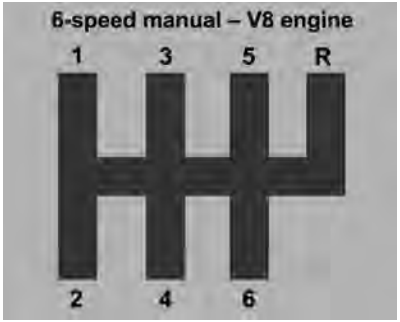
In this mode A/S functions as if activated from Sport mode, except that the transmission will automatically exit Temporary A/S mode to Normal Shift mode if any of the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle speed drops below approximately 10 km/h.
- No shift paddle is pressed and steady driving without accelerating, decelerating or cornering is detected for approximately 7 seconds.
- The + (Plus) steering wheel paddle is pulled and held for more than 1 second.
- The shift lever is moved out of D (Drive) to Sport Shift mode.

Manual Transmission

Shift pattern





V6 and V8 engines equipped with manual transmissions have six forward gears and a reverse gear, shown on top of the shift lever.

Manual operating notes

- When shifting from one gear to another, push the clutch pedal to the floor.
- Do not engage reverse gear while the vehicle is still moving.
- To select **R**, move the shift lever sideways against spring pressure to engage reverse gear.

Note: On V6 vehicles, moving the lever with momentum will reduce the effort required to select **R**.

- Pause between pressing the clutch pedal and moving into reverse gear.
- Whenever reverse gear is selected with the ignition on, the reverse lamps illuminate.

- For vehicles fitted with a manual transmission; when on level roads, in an unladen condition, it is permissible to drive off in 2nd gear, in the interest of fuel economy.
- Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal.
- When stopped on an incline, do not hold the vehicle stationary using the clutch. Use the park brake or foot brake.
- Shift to a lower gear when climbing steep gradients, before the engine starts to labour.
- Shift to a lower gear before descending steep gradients.
- Do not over rev the engine when shifting to a lower gear.
- V8, when vehicle speed is 14 km/h or less, engine speed is limited to 5,000 RPM.
- V6, when in neutral or the clutch is depressed, engine speed is limited to 6,000 RPM.

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

The ABS:

- Continuously monitors the vehicle's braking system preventing the wheels from locking up.
- Allows maximum braking effort while full steering control is retained, even in the event of panic braking.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. You should always adjust the vehicle's speed to suit road and traffic

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

Operation

ABS operation is noticeable by pulsing of the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

The initial self-check may also be audible.

Keep the brake pedal fully pressed throughout the braking process, without pumping it.

If the vehicle is travelling above 50 km/h and ABS braking occurs, the centrally mounted rear high level brake lamp will flash.

⚠ Warning

When the ignition is turned on, the (ABS) warning light briefly illuminates. The self-check of the ABS may be audible.

If the (ABS) warning light (ABS off) on the instrument panel display does not extinguish, or illuminates when driving, a malfunction has occurred.

Note: The vehicle's brake system remains operational, but without ABS assistance. Have a Holden Dealer check the system as soon as possible.

Electric Parking Brake

The electric parking brake (EPB) switch is located between the front seats.

The EPB takes the place of the manual parking brake system. The EPB can always be activated, even if the ignition is off. To avoid draining the battery, do not operate the EPB too often without the engine running.

In case of insufficient electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released.

Applying the Parking Brake

The EPB can be applied any time the vehicle is stopped. The EPB is applied by momentarily lifting up on the EPB switch. Once fully applied, (P) illuminates. While the brake is being applied, the status light will flash until full apply is reached. If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, you need to have the vehicle serviced. Do not drive the vehicle if (P) is flashing. See your dealer. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-15* for more information.

⚠ Warning

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is in motion, a chime will sound, and the DIC message RELEASE PARK BRAKE SWITCH will be displayed. The vehicle will

decelerate as long as the switch is held in the up position. Releasing the EPB switch during the deceleration will release the parking brake. If the switch is held in the up position until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

Releasing the Parking Brake

To release the EPB, turn the ignition switch to the ACC or ON/RUN position, apply and hold the brake pedal, and push down momentarily on the EPB switch. If you attempt to release the EPB without the brake pedal applied, a chime will sound, and the DIC message STEP ON BRAKE TO RELEASE PARK BRAKE will be displayed. The EPB is released when the Ⓟ light is off and the DIC message PARK BRAKE RELEASED is displayed.

⚠ Warning

Driving while Ⓟ is on may cause injury to yourself and others. Have the brake system checked immediately if this occurs.

Automatic EPB Release

The EPB will automatically release if the vehicle is running, placed into gear, and an attempt is made to drive away. Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied, to preserve park brake lining life.

Brake Assist

This vehicle has a brake assist feature designed to assist the driver in stopping or decreasing vehicle speed in emergency driving conditions. This feature uses the stability system hydraulic brake control module to supplement the power brake system under conditions where the driver has quickly and forcefully applied the brake pedal in an attempt to quickly stop or slow down the vehicle. The stability system hydraulic brake control module increases brake pressure at each corner of the vehicle until the ABS activates. Minor brake pedal pulsation or pedal movement during this time is normal and the driver should continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates. The brake assist feature will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released or brake pedal pressure is quickly decreased.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

The HSA system assists in preventing rollback when driving off, while on an incline.

1. Release the brake pedal.
2. Automatic transmission — Press the accelerator pedal.

   Manual transmission — Simultaneously press the accelerator pedal and progressively release the clutch pedal.

The brakes remain on for approximately 2 seconds or until the HSA system has detected vehicle drive off.

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control System (TCS)

The vehicle has a TCS that limits wheel spin. This is especially useful in slippery road conditions. The system operates only if it senses that the rear wheels are spinning too much or are beginning to lose traction. When this happens, the system works the rear brakes and reduces engine power by closing the throttle and managing engine spark to limit wheel spin.

The light will flash when the traction control system is limiting wheel spin.

The system may be heard or felt while it is working, but this is normal.

If the vehicle is in cruise control when TCS begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control will automatically disengage. The cruise control may be re-engaged when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 9-21*.

When the OFF light is on solid, the system will not limit wheel spin. Adjust your driving accordingly.

The Traction Control System is automatically enabled whenever the vehicle is started. To limit wheel spin, especially in slippery road conditions, always leave the system enabled. TCS can be turned off if needed.

It is recommended to leave the system on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn the system off if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow, and you want to “rock” the vehicle to attempt to free it.

To turn the system off or on, press OFF and release.

The light illuminates in the instrument cluster to indicate that TCS has been turned off.

Note: ESC is still enabled when only TCS has been turned off.

⚠ Caution

If the wheel(s) of one axle are allowed to spin excessively while the ESC/TCS, ABS and Brake

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

warning lights and the SERVICE ESC and/or SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL messages are displayed, the differential could be damaged. The repairs may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Reduce engine power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively while these lights and this message are displayed.

⚠ Caution

When traction control is turned off, it is possible to lose traction. If you attempt to shift gear with the wheels spinning with a loss of traction, it is possible to cause damage to the transmission. Do not attempt to shift gear when the wheels do not have traction.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

The vehicle has an Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system which combines antilock brake, traction and stability control systems and helps the driver maintain directional control of the vehicle in most driving conditions.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions.

When you first start the vehicle and begin to drive away, the system performs several diagnostic checks to ensure there are no problems. The system may be heard or felt while it is working. This is normal

and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle. The system should initialise before the vehicle reaches 40 km/h.

If the system fails to turn on or activate, the light illuminates in the instrument cluster and the appropriate message will be displayed.

See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-28*.

This will flash on the instrument cluster when the ESC system is both on and activated.

The system may be heard or felt while it is working; this is normal.

When the OFF light is on solid, the system will not assist the driver in maintaining directional control of the vehicle. Adjust your driving accordingly.

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is automatically enabled whenever the vehicle is started. To assist the driver with vehicle directional control, especially in slippery road conditions, the system should always be left on. But, ESC can be turned off if needed.

If the vehicle is in cruise control when the system begins to assist the driver maintain directional control of the vehicle, the light will flash and the cruise control will automatically disengage. The cruise control system may be re-engaged when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 9-21*.

To disable both traction control and ESC, press and hold the button for 5 seconds.

When the ESC system is turned off, the light and the OFF warning light will both be on to warn the driver that both traction control and ESC are disabled.

It is recommended to leave the system on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn the system off if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice or snow, and you want to “rock” the vehicle to attempt to free it. It may also be necessary to turn off the system when driving in extreme off-road conditions where high wheel spin is required.

ESC may also turn off automatically if it determines that a problem exists with the system. The appropriate messages and the light will be on solid to warn the driver that ESC is disabled and requires service. If the problem does not clear after

restarting the vehicle, see your dealer for service. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-28*.

Competitive Driving Mode (Redline)

⚠ Warning

Competitive Driving Mode and Launch Control are systems designed for a closed course race track and not intended for use on public roads. The systems are not intended to compensate for lack of driver experience or familiarity with the race track.

Competitive Driving Mode and Launch Control modify the performance of certain safety features and should only be used, with caution, in closed conditions. Drivers who prefer to allow the system to have more control of the engine and brake systems are advised to turn the normal TCS and ESC systems on.

⚠ Caution

Do not attempt to shift gear when the drive wheels are spinning and do not have traction. This may cause damage to the transmission. Damage caused by racing or misuse of the vehicle may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

Note: Racing or misuse will contribute to the premature wear of brakes, tyres and driveline components.

Competitive Driving Mode controls engine power while the ESC system helps maintain directional control of the vehicle by selective brake application. In this mode, TCS is optimised and Launch Control is available. Adjust your driving style to account for the available engine power. See “Launch Control” later in this section.

The OFF light is on when the vehicle is in the Competitive Driving Mode.

This optional handling mode can be selected by pressing the OFF button quickly two times. The appropriate message displays in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-28* for more information.

When the OFF button is pressed again, the TCS and ESC systems are on. The appropriate message displays briefly in the DIC.

The ESC system is also automatically enabled whenever the vehicle is started.

Launch Control (Redline with manual transmissions only)

Launch Control is a form of traction control that manages wheel spin while launching the vehicle.

Launch Control is only available when the following criteria are met:

- Competitive Driving Mode is selected.
- The vehicle is not moving.
- The steering wheel is pointing straight ahead.
- The clutch is pressed and the vehicle is in first gear.
- The accelerator pedal is rapidly applied to wide open throttle.

The Launch Control feature will initially limit engine speed as the driver rapidly applies the accelerator pedal to wide open throttle.
A smooth, quick release of the clutch, while maintaining the fully pressed accelerator pedal, will manage wheel slip.

After the vehicle is launched, the system continues in Competitive Driving Mode.

Cruise Control

The cruise control:

- Maintains the vehicle's speed without pressing the accelerator pedal.
- Will only operate at speeds above 40 km/h.
- Switches are located on the steering wheel.

⚠ Warning

Do not use the cruise control when road or driving conditions require varying speeds.
A constant speed is not practical in heavy or varying traffic or on winding, slippery or rough roads.

Remember that when illuminates green, the cruise control is maintaining the vehicle's speed. Taking your foot off the accelerator pedal does not reduce the speed. To deactivate the cruise control, press the brake pedal, press the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or push .

The cruise control does not apply the vehicle's brakes. The vehicle may gain speed when going down steep hills.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

When climbing steep hills (particularly when towing), the vehicle may lose speed. In this case, use the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal when the speed returns to the set speed.

The cruise control is cancelled if Traction Control (TC) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) becomes active, indicated by flashing on the instrument panel display.

Setting a speed

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Press .

   illuminates white.

3. When travelling at the desired speed, rotate the wheel down to **SET/-**.

   The current speed is stored and maintained.

   illuminates green.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.

   Vehicle speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

Adjusting the set speed

To reduce the set speed, rotate the wheel down to **SET/-** or briefly rotate **SET/-** repeatedly.Speed decreases continuously or in small increments.

To increase the set speed, rotate the wheel up to **RES/+** or briefly rotate **RES/+** repeatedly.Speed increases continuously or in small increments.Alternatively, accelerate to the desired speed and store by rotating to **RES/+**.

Deactivation

Press .

illuminates white.

Cruise control is deactivated.

The stored speed is maintained.

Cruise control automatically deactivates when:

- Vehicle speed is below approximately 30 km/h.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The clutch pedal is pressed.
- The shift lever is placed in N.
- Traction Control (TC) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is operating.
- A Forward Collision Alert occurs.

Resuming a stored speed

Rotate the wheel up to **RES/+** at a speed above 40 km/h.

The stored speed is resumed.

Turning cruise control off

Press .

extinguishes.

The stored speed is deleted.

Alternatively, turn the ignition off.

Object Detection Systems

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

The vehicle may have Forward Collision Alert (FCA).

The FCA system may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. FCA provides a flashing visual alert and beeps when approaching a vehicle directly ahead too quickly. FCA also provides a visual alert if following another vehicle much too closely. The indicator and the FCA alert are displayed in the Head-Up Display (HUD).

The forward-looking FCA camera sensor is on the windscreen ahead of the rear view mirror. FCA detects vehicles within a distance of approximately 60 m and operates at speeds above 40 km/h.

⚠ Warning

FCA is a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Always be ready to take action while driving and apply the brakes.

Detecting the Vehicle Ahead

The green vehicle ahead indicator will appear when a vehicle is detected ahead. Whenever this indicator does not appear, FCA will not respond. The indicator may disappear on curves, highway exit ramps, hills, or due to poor visibility. The FCA system will not detect another vehicle ahead until it is completely in the driving lane.

⚠ Warning

FCA does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects a vehicle. FCA may not detect a vehicle ahead if the FCA sensor is blocked by dirt, snow,

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

or ice, or if the windscreen is damaged. It may also not detect a vehicle on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windscreen are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windscreen, headlamps, and FCA sensors clean and in good repair.

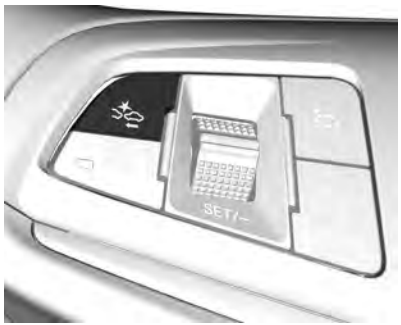
Tailgating Alert

The indicator changes to amber when following another vehicle too closely.

Collision Alert

When your vehicle approaches another vehicle too rapidly, the red FCA display will flash and sound eight beeps. When this occurs, the brake system prepares for driver braking to occur more rapidly. Continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates.

Selecting the Gap Setting



The Collision Alert control is on the steering wheel. Press to set the gap setting to far, medium, near or off. The first button press shows the current control setting on the HUD.

Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed and will affect both the Collision Alert and the Tailgating Alert features. The timing of both alerts will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the further away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing. The range of selectable alert timing may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

Unnecessary Alerts

FCA may sometimes set unnecessary alerts to turning vehicles, vehicles in other lanes, objects that are not vehicles, or shadows. These alerts are normal operation and the vehicle does not need service.

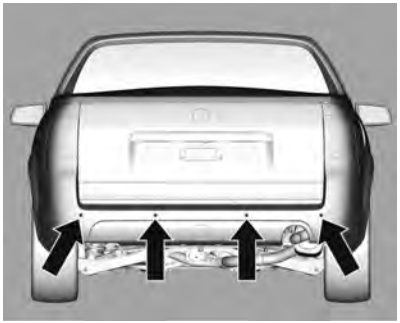
Other Messages

There are messages that may appear on the Driver Information Centre (DIC) in the instrument cluster to provide information about FCA. See *Object Detection System Messages on page 5-28*.

Cleaning the System

If the FCA system does not seem to operate properly, clean the outside of the windscreen area in front of the camera sensor before considering taking the vehicle in for service.

Parking Assist



The PA system is able to detect obstacles in the front and the rear of the vehicle when moving forward and reversing.

The PA consists of sensors on the front and rear bumpers, a control unit and speakers in the front and rear of the vehicle's interior.

⚠ Warning

The driver is always responsible for taking care and attention while manoeuvring the vehicle. The PA

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

is only an aid and is neither intended to, nor able to take over any responsibility.

The park sensors may not be able to detect all objects under every condition e.g. objects too close to the vehicle, objects above or below the sensors, or objects with a surface that absorbs ultrasonic waves. Additionally, some ambient conditions like ultrasonic waves or heavy rain can cause disruptive reflections from an object's surface. Such objects may not be detected.

Always manoeuvre the vehicle slowly to allow yourself sufficient time to react. The warning tones will sound only while the vehicle's speed is below 15 km/h.

⚠ Caution

Sensors are not working when:

- A confirmation tone does not sound (manual transmission).
- **Park Assist Fault** appears on the DIC.

Check and clean the sensors.

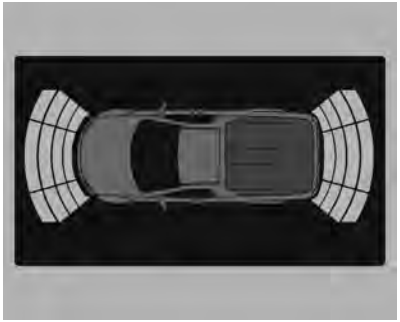
If the problem persists, contact your dealer.

Note:

- The range of the rear sensors is approximately 240 cm.
- The range of the front sensors is approximately 150 cm.

When an object is detected:

- A warning tone sounds.
- As the distance decreases, the repetition rate of the tone increases.
- At a distance of about 30 cm, the warning tone sounds continuously.
- If the distance remains constant, after about 2 seconds, the tone will stop.
- If the distance to the object increases, the tone will stop.
- When reverse gear is selected and the rear and front sensors both detect objects, only the closest object will be indicated.
- If two objects at the same distance are detected, the object at the rear of the vehicle will be given priority.



- When reverse is selected the animation is displayed on the infotainment screen if the Rear Vision Camera (RVC) is deactivated, see *Rear Vision Camera (RVC) on page 9-31*.
- The default display Park Assist or Rear View Camera may be selected in the Park Assist mode menu. See Default Display Selection under *Rear Vision Camera (RVC) on page 9-31*.
- If the sensors are activated, an animation will display the detection range if the RVC is deactivated.
- If an object enters the range, the sector will illuminate green. When the distance decreases, additional sectors will illuminate and the colour will change to yellow, orange and finally red.
- Front sensor detection occurs when PA is turned on by pressing P or by selecting reverse gear first. The light in the button illuminates.
- When drive is selected, the animation is shown only when the sensors detect an object and the vehicle's speed is below 15 km/h.
- If a short tone is heard when there are no objects visible, it may be due to ground reflections, children or animals. Be aware.
- Keep bumper sensors free from dirt, scratches, grime, ice, frost and snow with a soft cloth.

Operation

The PA is activated automatically when the following occur:

- The ignition is turned on.
- Reverse gear is selected.
- The park brake is released.

When a forward gear is selected after reverse, the front and rear sensors will remain operational until the vehicle's speed exceeds 15 km/h.

If a forward gear is selected, only the front sensors are activated and the tone will sound from the front speaker.

Note: The PA:

- Automatically deactivates when the vehicle's speed exceeds 15 km/h.

- Is reactivated if changing from a forward to reverse gear or vice versa, or if the ignition is turned off then on again.
- When manually deactivated, will not automatically activate until the PA has been manually reactivated.

Manual adjustment

When the vehicle's speed is below 15 km/h:

- To deactivate the PA, press P once. The light in the button will turn off.
- To reactivate the PA, press P once. The light in the button will illuminate and the front sensors will activate.

  Alternatively, select reverse gear.

If the PA is activated and the light in the P button:

- Does not illuminate, check that the ignition is turned on, the vehicle is in gear and the park brake is not activated.
- Flashes when the button is pressed.

  Contact a Holden Dealer.

Objects attached to the vehicle

When any device is attached to the rear of the vehicle, such as a trailer or a bicycle rack, the PA will:

- Detect this as an attached object.
- Deactivate automatically about 10 seconds after the vehicle's forward speed exceeds 15 km/h.
- Be reactivated automatically when the object is removed, the ignition is turned off then on again and the vehicle's forward speed exceeds 15 km/h.

Adjustment for a tow bar

When a tow bar is fitted, the rear park sensors require adjustment to allow for the tow ball tongue:

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Press VOL ⏻ to turn the infotainment system on.
3. Press HOME then touch the Config screen button.

4. Select the Vehicle Settings menu.
5. Select the Collision Detection Settings menu.
6. Select Park Assist.
7. Select On with Tow Bar Attached.

   The option selected is indicated by ☑.

Note:

- This adjustment is for Holden approved tow bars fitted by a Holden Dealer.
- If a different tow bar is fitted, the system may detect it as an attached object and will be deactivated.

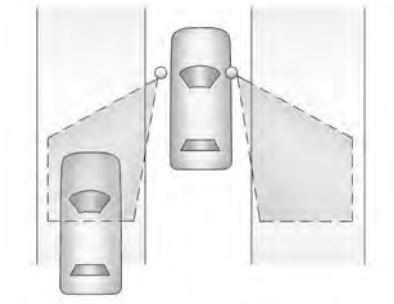
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

The vehicle may have Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA).

The SBZA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding crashes that occur with vehicles in the side blind zone (or spot) areas.

⚠ Danger

SBZA does not detect vehicles rapidly approaching outside of the side blind zones, pedestrians, cyclists or animals. Failure to use proper care when changing lanes may result in injury, death or vehicle damage. Before making a lane change, always check mirrors, glance over your shoulder and use the turn signals.



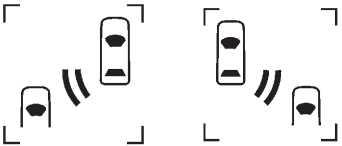
SBZA Detection Zones

The SBZA sensor covers a zone of approximately one lane over from both sides of the vehicle, or 3.5 m. This zone starts at each side mirror and goes back approximately 5 m. The height of the zone is approximately between 0.5 m and 2 m off the ground.

Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer, as the SBZA detection zones that extend back from the side of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed.

How the System Works

The SBZA symbol lights up in the side mirrors when the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone, indicating it may be unsafe to change lanes. Before making a lane change, check the SBZA display, check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.



Left Side Mirror Display **Right Side Mirror Display**

When the vehicle is started, both outside mirror SBZA displays will briefly come on to indicate the system is operating. When the vehicle is moving forward, the left- or right-side mirror display will light up if a vehicle is detected in that blind zone. If the turn signal is activated and a vehicle is also detected on the same side, the display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes.

SBZA displays may come on when a passed vehicle remains in or drops back into the detection zone.

SBZA can be disabled through vehicle personalisation. See “Collision Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-30*. If SBZA is disabled by the driver, the SBZA mirror displays will not light up.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

SBZA may not always alert the driver to vehicles in the blind zone, especially in wet conditions. The system does not need to be serviced. The system may light up due to guardrails, signs, trees, shrubs, and other non-moving objects. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

SBZA may not operate when the SBZA sensors in the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush, or in heavy rainstorms. For cleaning instructions, see “Washing the Vehicle” under *Exterior Care on page 10-59*. If the DIC still displays the SIDE DETECTION SYSTEM UNAVAILABLE message after cleaning the rear bumper corners, see your dealer. This message may also be displayed when driving near sites where the SBZA system could cause interference.

If the SBZA displays do not light up when vehicles are in the blind zone and the system is clean, the system may need service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

When SBZA is disabled for any reason other than the driver turning it off, the Side Blind Zone Alert On option will not be available on the personalisation menu.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

⚠ Warning

Never rely solely on the reverse camera when reversing the vehicle.

There is a blind spot that cannot be sensed by the rear view camera.

The reverse camera is not intended to replace the driver's judgement or attention toward the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

Before entering the vehicle always check that the area around the vehicle is clear of obstacles and people.

Always perform head checks and use the vehicle's mirrors when reversing.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the reverse camera (rear number plate surround), the camera may become misaligned. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Always keep the camera lens free from dirt, snow or ice. Only use mild soap and water with a soft cloth to clean the lens.

A view of the area behind the vehicle is displayed on the infotainment screen, when reverse gear is selected.

The RVC cannot display objects:

- Close to the corners of the vehicle.
- Forward of the camera.
- Higher than the camera.

Note:

- The distance of the objects seen on the screen differs from the actual distance.
- The area displayed depends on the road condition and vehicle orientation.

Cleaning

- The camera is located at the top of the rear number plate surround.

- The lens requires regular cleaning to ensure optimum performance.
- Use only a soft cloth, mild soap and water.

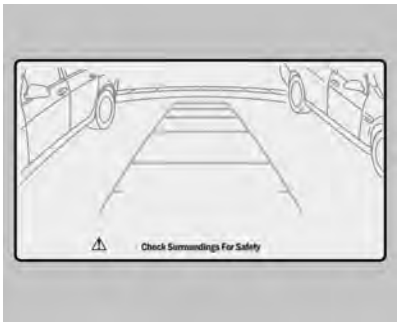
⚠ Warning

Do not use abrasive cleaners or scouring pads as they could scratch the lens, impairing the systems performance.

Operation

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Press VOL ⏻ to turn the infotainment system on.
3. Press Home then touch the Config screen button.
4. Turn the TUNE/MENU knob to highlight Display Settings.
5. Press the centre of the TUNE/MENU knob to select the Display Settings menu.
6. Select Rear Camera Options.
7. Select Camera, Symbols and/or Guide Lines.

   The option selected is indicated by ☑.
8. Touch Back to exit.
9. Select reverse gear.



10. The camera display appears on the infotainment screen.

When displayed, the Guide Lines assist with reversing by moving, to show the vehicle's intended path.

⚠ Warning

The driver is always responsible for taking care and attention while manoeuvring the vehicle. The camera display and guidelines are only an aid and are neither intended to, nor able to take over any responsibility.

Default Display Selection

The default display Park Assist or Rear View Camera may be selected:

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Press VOL ⏻ to turn the infotainment system on.
3. Press Home then touch the Config screen button.
4. Turn the TUNE/MENU knob to highlight Display Settings.
5. Press the centre of the TUNE/MENU knob to select the Display Settings menu.

6. Select Park Assist Mode.
7. Select Show Rear View Camera or Show Park Assist.

   The option selected is indicated by ☑.
8. Touch Back to exit.

Note:

- Objects of different heights will appear to be different distances from the vehicle.
- The RVC display will override all other operating displays.
- The RVC display may be temporarily interrupted when some audio system or climate control settings are changed.
- The PA animation on the infotainment screen will not be seen when the reverse camera is enabled. See *Parking Assist on page 9-25*.
- The PA warning tones will still be heard when the reverse camera is enabled. See *Parking Assist on page 9-25*.

The reverse camera system may be affected by the following:

- If sun or headlamp beams are shining directly into the camera lens.
- If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the camera lens. Contact a Holden Dealer.
- If dirt, snow or ice has built up, clean the lens. See “Cleaning” previously in this section.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

On vehicles equipped with the Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA), a red warning triangle with an arrow may also display on the infotainment display to warn of traffic coming from either direction. This system detects objects coming from up to 25 m from the left or right side of the vehicle. When an object is detected, two beeps sound from the left or right, depending on the direction of the detected vehicle.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

The vehicle may have Lane Departure Warning (LDW).

Read the entire section before using this feature.

⚠ Danger

The LDW system is an aid to help the vehicle stay in the driving lane. It does not steer the vehicle. The LDW system may not:

- Provide enough time to avoid a crash.
- Detect lane markings under bad weather conditions or if the windscreen is dirty.
- Detect lane markings and will not detect road edges.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

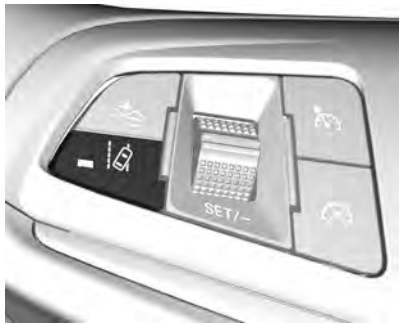
- Warn that the vehicle is crossing a lane marking if the system does not detect the lane marking.

If LDW only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only warn you when departing the lane on the side where it has detected a lane marker. Even with LDW, always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, or vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Always keep the windscreen clean and do not use LDW in bad weather conditions.

When the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking, the LDW indicator will flash and three beeps will sound. LDW will not warn if the turn signal is on or if a sharp manoeuvre is made (steering, accelerator or brake inputs).

How the System Works

The LDW camera sensor is on the windscreen ahead of the rear view mirror.



To turn LDW on and off, press the button on the steering wheel. The control indicator will light when LDW is on.

When the vehicle is started, the indicator on the instrument panel will come on briefly.

LDW operates at speeds of 56 km or greater. If LDW is on, the indicator will appear green if the system detects a left or right lane marking. This indicator will change to amber, flash, and three chimes will sound if the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking without using the turn signal.

To change the volume of the warning chime, see “Chime Volume” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-30* for more information.

When the System Does Not Seem To Work Properly

If does not appear:

- The lane markings on the road may not be seen.
- The camera sensor may be blocked by dirt, snow or ice.
- The windscreen may be damaged.
- The weather may be limiting visibility.

This is normal operation; the vehicle does not need service. Clean the windscreen.

⚠ Warning

LDW does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects the lane markings. LDW may not detect the lane markings if the camera sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

windscreen is damaged. It may also not detect a lane on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windscreen are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windscreen, headlamps, and camera sensors clean and in good repair.

LDW warnings may occasionally occur due to tar marks, shadows, cracks in the road, or other road imperfections. This is normal system operation, the vehicle does not need service.

LDW Messages

FRONT CAMERA BLOCKED, CLEAN WINDSCREEN: This message may appear because the front camera is blocked and cannot operate properly. It may also activate during heavy rain or due to road spray.

LANE DEPARTURE SYSTEM UNAVAILABLE: This message may appear if LDW does not activate due to a temporary condition.

SERVICE FRONT CAMERA: This message may appear to indicate that LDW is not working properly. If this message remains on after continued driving, the system needs service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

Driver Assistance Systems

Advanced Parking Assist

Advanced Parking Assist (APA)

The vehicle has APA.

When APA is active, the system detects available parallel or perpendicular (90°) parking spaces.

The APA system uses the front and rear parking sensors, as well as two front side sensors during operation.

The system guides the vehicle into a final parked position by automatically controlling the steering. The driver remains in control of the accelerator, brakes, transmission and clutch (manual transmission) at all times. Directions are provided by messages displayed on the DIC. These directions will include the gear required, the direction of vehicle movement and steering control indication.

Suitable parking space dimensions are:

- Parallel space length — vehicle length plus 1.1 m up to 20.0 m
- Minimum perpendicular space width — vehicle width plus 1.0 m

1. With the vehicle in **D** (Drive) or a forward gear, press P to initiate APA for a parallel parking space search.

Note: The APA system is constantly scanning while the vehicle is moving forward. APA can be initiated even if the space has just been passed.

Press and hold for 2 seconds to initiate a perpendicular parking space search. A beep will be heard.

Searching parking space is displayed on the DIC.

Note: Pressing P or P will deactivate the APA system.

2. Drive forwards at less than 30 km/h, at a distance from the parked vehicles of:

   Parallel search — 0.5 m to 1.5 m

   Perpendicular search — 0.7 m to 1.5 m is recommended for optimum detection

   The APA searches for a suitable parking space on the left side of the vehicle.

Note: To search for a parking space on the right side of the vehicle, push the turn and lane-change signal lever down.

   When a suitable parking space is found, a message is displayed on the DIC to stop the vehicle. A chime will sound.

   It is possible to continue moving forward to search for subsequent parking spaces.

3. Bring the vehicle to a complete standstill.
4. Select **R** (reverse).
5. Reverse into the parking space at less than 10 km/h, using only the brake and accelerator pedals to control the vehicle. If the vehicle exceeds 10 km/h, the APA will cancel.

   The APA will automatically control the steering and display messages on the DIC with the required gear changes.

   Allow the APA to autosteer with the vehicle at a standstill for best results.
6. When the parking manoeuvre is complete, a message displays on the DIC and a chime will sound.

   Confirm that the front and rear clearance distances are acceptable and adjust if required.

⚠ Warning

The driver is always responsible for taking care and attention while manoeuvring the vehicle. The APA is only an aid and is neither intended to, nor able to take over any responsibility.

The driver should intervene and take control of the steering and cancel the APA if there are any concerns about the risk of collision.

The park sensors may not be able to detect all objects under every condition e.g. objects too close to the vehicle, objects above or below the sensors, or objects with a surface that absorbs ultrasonic waves. Additionally, some ambient conditions like rain, hail or snow

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

can cause disruptive reflections from an object's surface. Such objects may not be detected.

Always manoeuvre the vehicle slowly to allow yourself sufficient time to react. The warning tones will sound only while the vehicle's speed is below 8 km/h.

Note:

- If the steering wheel is held firmly while the APA system is operating, the APA will cancel.
- The APA system will only park the vehicle in a space between two objects.
- Drive parallel and straight for best results.
- When perpendicular parking, the APA system may stop short and require manual position adjustment due to objects detected within the parking space.
- The APA system may steer across or into kerbs in some situations. This may be due to kerbs at a reclined angle or leaves in the gutter which prevent the APA system from receiving a good ultrasonic signal. As always, the driver is responsible in these situations and should intervene to prevent damage to the vehicle.
- When APA is active, if the vehicle speed is between 30 km/h and 60 km/h the system will remain in standby mode. For the APA to resume searching for a space, the vehicle speed must be below 30 km/h. If the vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h, APA will deactivate.
- If Genuine Holden Accessory wheels are fitted, the APA system calibration may require reprogramming by your dealer.
- Ensure tyre pressures are correct to ensure APA system functionality.
- If a Genuine Holden Accessory roo bar is fitted, the APA system will be required to be deactivated by your dealer.
- The APA system may not function if objects are attached to the front or rear bumper fascias.

Fuel

⚠ Danger

EXHAUST WARNING – CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING

Exhaust gases can contain carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas, which can cause unconsciousness and even death to both humans and animals.

Gases could be inhaled if the exhaust system on your vehicle is faulty.

To protect against exhaust gases entering the vehicle, the exhaust system and body should be inspected:

- Each time the vehicle is serviced.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system.
- Whenever the exhaust system, underbody or rear of the vehicle is damaged.

Take the vehicle to a Holden Dealer if you think the vehicle needs inspecting for any of the above reasons.

Do not sit (or leave children or pets) in a parked vehicle for any extended period of time with the engine running. Do not run the engine in an enclosed area (such as the garage) any longer than is needed to move the vehicle.

⚠ Danger

FUEL

Fuel is extremely flammable and highly explosive.

Always switch off the engine of the vehicle and any mobile phones when refuelling.

Do not smoke or allow open flames or sparks near the vehicle when refuelling.

If fuel fumes are smelt while driving, the cause should be found and corrected without delay by a Holden Dealer.

⚠ Caution

FUEL ADDITIVES

Various additives are used in the formulation of good quality fuel and the use of supplementary

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

additives in fuel is not required unless specified by Holden. Under no circumstances should fuel containing the manganese additive known as MMT (methyl cyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl) be used, as this additive is known to cause contamination of catalytic converters, spark plugs and the malfunction of On-Board-Diagnostic (OBD) systems. The use of fuel additives that are not recommended by Holden may affect your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty to the extent that Holden considers that the additives affect the specifications and quality of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

USE OF FUEL CONTAINING ETHANOL

When filling the fuel tank with an ethanol-petrol fuel blend, under no circumstances should fuel containing more than 10% ethanol be used.

Use of such fuels may result in engine malfunction, starting and operating difficulties and materials degradation. These adverse effects could result in permanent damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

The use of fuel containing more than 10% ethanol may also affect your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty to the extent that Holden considers that the fuel affects the specifications and quality of your vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

It is also important to note that when fuel containing ethanol is used, fuel consumption can be expected to increase due to the lower energy content of ethanol.

The vehicle may be refuelled with E10 and unleaded fuel containing no ethanol. It is acceptable to mix these fuels.

The use of any fuel, other than the fuel specified, may seriously damage the vehicle and may void the warranty. See *Recommended Fuel on page 9-40*. Only clean fuel of good quality should be used.

Recommended Fuel

Unleaded petrol

Use unleaded petrol of regular 91 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher.

Use of Premium unleaded petrol (95 RON or higher) may provide a small improvement in performance and fuel economy.

Filling the Tank

To open the fuel filler flap:

1. Unlock the vehicle.
2. Push on the rear edge of the fuel filler flap located on the right side of the vehicle.
3. To close, push on the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Always fill the fuel tank at the intermediate or fast fill rate. Do not add any more fuel after the fuel filler first clicks off or fuel blows back. This allows room for the fuel to expand inside the tank.

Only trickle-fill fuel tanks when the vehicle is to be driven for more than 50 km immediately after the tank is filled. However, this is not recommended on days over 30 °C.

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately from the vehicle. Replace the fuel cap and close the fuel opening then spray or splash with water.

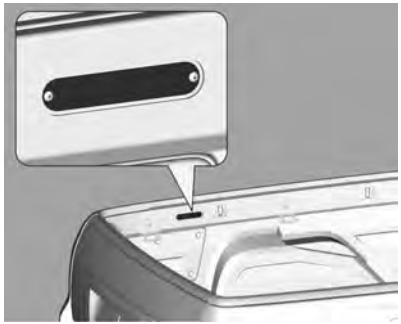
⚠ Warning

Never fill a portable fuel container in or on the vehicle. Static electricity can ignite the fuel vapor. Always place the container on the ground and keep the fuel nozzle in contact with the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

container at all times while filling, as indicated on the warning plate on the inside of the load area.



1. Turn the engine off.

   The fuel cap, under the fuel filler flap, is a ratchet type cap that is tethered to the vehicle.
2. To open, rotate the cap anticlockwise.
3. Hang the tether over the hook on the fuel filler flap.
4. After refilling, tighten the cap by rotating clockwise until a clicking noise is heard.
5. Close the fuel filler flap.

Tank capacity

See *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-6*.

Towing

Trailer Towing

Trailer towing

The word trailer is used throughout this section and includes all types of towed vehicles, such as caravans, boat trailers or any other special purpose trailer.

Towing

Handling, durability and economy may be affected by towing a trailer.

For recommended and mandatory towing equipment, see “Towing and loading equipment” later in this section.

A Holden Dealer will assist with supply and installation of towing equipment.

Maximum towing capacities (kg) – braked trailer

Engine	3.6L V6		6.0L V8	
Transmission	**Manual**	**Automatic**	**Manual**	**Automatic**
Ute	1600	1600	1600	1600

Note:

- The maximum unbraked towing capacity for all vehicles is 750 kg.

Overloading

Never exceed the loads given for the towing equipment fitted to the vehicle.

All mandatory equipment must be fitted, otherwise you may void the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty, to the extent that Holden considers the overloading or missing equipment to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle. See “Towing and loading equipment” later in this section.

⚠ Warning

Holden towing equipment is recommended where it is available. Where it is not available, no recommendation is made as to the make of equipment which should be used. Holden will not accept liability for defects occurring in towing equipment not marketed by Holden or for defects in the vehicle arising from the use of such equipment or for loss or injury caused by use of such

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

equipment. The use of such equipment may void your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty, to the extent that Holden considers the non-recommended equipment affects the specifications or quality of your Holden vehicle.
It is inadvisable to mix and match different brands of towing equipment, as equipment is usually designed as an integrated package.

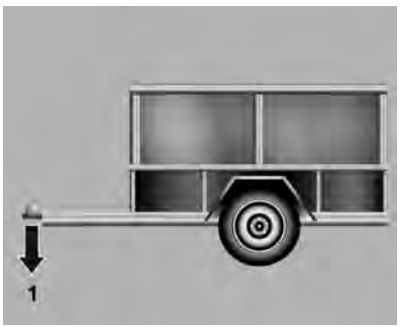
Manual transmission

When towing, do not exceed 100 km/h. Local laws may require a lower maximum speed.

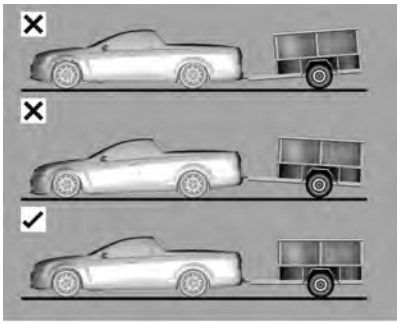
Automatic transmission

For the recommended automatic shift modes to use when towing, see *Shift Lever on page 9-9*.

Trailer recommendations



A trailer hitched to a vehicle places a weight on the tow bar. This weight is called the tow bar ball weight or tow ball load (1).



The tow ball load should be between 5% and 10% of the loaded trailer weight. Adjust by moving items forwards or backwards within the trailer, to change the balance.

For heavy trailers with more than one axle, the tow ball load should be in the range of 5% to 10% of the loaded trailer mass.

If the tow ball load is too light or too heavy, the steering and handling of the vehicle may be affected.

The maximum tow ball load must not exceed 160 kg.

Axle loads must not be exceeded when the tow ball load is included. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight on page 12-5*.

If maximum axle loads are exceeded, transfer weight from the rear of the vehicle onto the trailer.

Ensure the weight of the packed trailer is not greater than the towing capacity of the Holden approved tow bar package fitted to the vehicle.

Towing and loading equipment

Tow load	Mandatory equipment	Recommended equipment
Up to 750 kg	Holden 1,600 kg rated tow bar	
	Holden trailer wiring harness	
Between 751 kg and 1,600 kg	Holden 1,600 kg rated tow bar	Load distribution hitch
	Holden trailer wiring harness	
	Brakes on the trailer	

Recommended trailer wiring harness maximum loads

Output Circuit	Maximum circuit rating at 12 V
Trailer brake lights	3.5 A
Trailer left indicator	1.8 A
Trailer right indicator	1.8 A
Trailer reverse	3.5 A
Trailer tail lamps	5.7 A
*Electric brake controller	10.0 A

Note: *Electric brake controller provision is provided in the Holden Genuine Accessory Trailer Wiring Harness. Holden recommend that only this provision is used when using an electric brake controller.

Load distribution hitch

The vehicle may have a load distribution hitch.

The load distribution hitch must be removed when not in use. Do not leave the hitch assembly in the receiver unless a trailer is attached.

A load distribution hitch transfers load to the vehicle's front wheels aiding brake performance. This also enables more load to be carried in the vehicle without exceeding the rear axle load limit.

⚠ Warning

At no time may the total front or rear axle load exceed the maximums specified. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight on page 12-5*.

Towing precautions

- When heavily loading the vehicle or when towing, inflate tyres to the maximum recommended pressure. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-36*.
- Ensure that a load distribution hitch is correctly distributing the tow ball load.
- Tighten the tow ball retaining nut to 140 N•m (Newton metres) and check the torque frequently.
- Vehicles handle differently when towing. Take a couple of short distance trips with the trailer before taking a long trip.
- Have the vehicle and trailer correctly maintained and serviced, with particular attention given to the brakes, tyres, suspension, wheel bearings, towing coupling and lighting.
- Use an extended-arm mirror on both sides of the vehicle if necessary.
- Headlamps may need re-aiming after the loaded trailer has been hitched, particularly if a load distribution hitch is not used.
- Use a lower gear and the brakes, when descending steep hills.
- Automatic transmission: At highway speeds it is recommended that cruise control be used. Cruise control prevents the transmission from unnecessarily changing gears, particularly on gradients. See *Shift Lever on page 9-9* for further recommendations when towing.
- Do not use axle-mounted hitches.
- Ensure that the tow bar does not obscure the rear number plate. Remove the tow bar tongue when not required for towing.
- If a tow bar is removed, have any mounting holes in the underbody sealed to prevent entry of exhaust fumes, dust and water.
- The M10 anti-rattle bolt and nut should be removed when towing to prevent damage to the bolt or tow bar tongue.
- Park Assist (PA) will require adjustment to allow for the installation or removal of the tow bar tongue. See “Adjustment for a towbar” under *Parking Assist on page 9-25*.

Trailer brakes

- Trailer brakes are mandatory on trailers with an aggregate trailer mass (ATM) of more than 750 kg.

- Consult the appropriate regulatory body in your State or Territory for the legal requirements of trailer brakes.

Running-in when towing

It is recommended that a new vehicle be driven for at least 1,500 km before towing.

If towing is necessary before this, do not exceed 80 km/h. This also applies if the vehicle is fitted with a new or reconditioned engine, transmission or rear axle.

Vehicle maintenance

More frequent vehicle maintenance is required when using the vehicle to tow. Refer to the Service/ Warranty Booklet in the vehicle's glove box.

Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

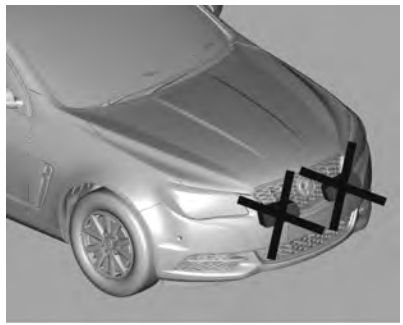
If the system detects trailer sway movements, engine power is reduced and the vehicle/trailer combination is selectively braked until the trailer sway ceases. While the system is working, keep steering as still as possible.

TSC is a function of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system and may be disabled by turning the Traction Control System (TCS) or ESC off. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-17* and *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-18*.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Fitting driving lamps or insect screens



Do not fit any accessory over the upper or lower air intakes at the front of the vehicle, as this may affect engine cooling.

The Holden Genuine Accessories are an exception, however they should be removed in high load and high temperature conditions.

⚠ Caution

In high load and high temperature applications (e.g. towing) no objects should be fitted over the upper or lower air intake at the front of the vehicle, as this could affect cooling. This includes removing Holden Genuine Accessories in this area, in these conditions.

Fitting roo bars

If a roo bar is to be fitted, it is critical that the Holden approved roo bar be used. Other types must not be fitted.

The Holden roo bar is available from a Holden Dealer and has been compatibility tested with the vehicle's design, including the Holden airbag system.

The Holden roo bar has alternative front position and indicator lamps which are connected in place of the standard vehicle lamps.

PA and APA will be deactivated when the Holden Genuine Accessory Roo Bar is fitted by a Holden Dealer.

⚠ Warning

Fitting other types of roo bars may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling.

Roo bars should not be fitted to vehicles operating in suburban areas, as they increase the risk of injury to a pedestrian in the event of a collision.

Vehicle Care

General Information
General Information 10-1
Emission Information 10-1
Emission Control System 10-1

Vehicle Checks
Bonnet 10-3
Engine Compartment Overview 10-4
Engine Cover 10-5
Engine Oil 10-6
Engine Coolant 10-8
Engine Overheating 10-10
Washer Fluid 10-15
Brake Fluid 10-15
Battery 10-17

Bulb Replacement
Bulb Replacement 10-18
Headlamps 10-19
Front Turn Signal Lamps ... 10-22
Tail lamps 10-23
Number Plate Lamp 10-25
Interior Lamps 10-25

Electrical System
Fuses 10-26

Vehicle Tools
Tools 10-35

Wheels and Tyres
Tyre Pressure 10-36
Tread Depth 10-38
Tyre Rotation 10-38
Buying New Tyres 10-39
Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance 10-39
Tyre Chains 10-40
Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit 10-40
Tyre Changing 10-46

Jump Starting
Jump Starting 10-56

Towing the Vehicle
Towing the Vehicle 10-59

Appearance Care
Exterior Care 10-59
Interior Care 10-62
Floor Mats 10-63

General Information

Where specified, use only Holden genuine parts and accessories.

Emission Information

The emission control systems are designed to reduce the amount of hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO), and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) that are emitted from the engine and fuel system into the atmosphere. HC and NOx, when exposed to sunlight under certain conditions, contribute to photochemical smog. In addition, CO is toxic to inhale.

Emission Control System

Major emission control systems that the vehicle may have are:

- Evaporative emission control system. This system is designed to prevent the escape of fuel vapour from the fuel system and recycle the vapours through the normal combustion process.

- Crankcase emission control system. This system is designed to prevent blow-by gases from escaping into the atmosphere and recycle them through the combustion process.
- Exhaust emission control system. The various components of this system operate collectively to limit HC, CO and NOx emissions in the exhaust gas. The exhaust emission control system consists of components including electronic control of spark, fuel and idle speed. In addition vehicles have a catalytic converter and closed loop mixture control system.

It is recommended that service and repair to fuel or emission systems be carried out by an authorised Holden Dealer.

Owner responsibility

The engine, engine control system and exhaust system of the vehicle must NOT be modified in any way.

⚠ Warning

Any person who removes, modifies or hinders any part of the emission control system may be contravening Australian Design Rules. It is also illegal to drive a vehicle modified in this way.

Maintenance requirements

Have the vehicle serviced at the frequency shown in the Maintenance schedule, in the Service/Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that servicing be carried out by an authorised Holden Dealer who will maintain the vehicle's emission control system as per the Service/Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that all fluid levels are checked weekly.

Reducing fuel consumption

Engine

Have the vehicle serviced regularly in accordance with the maintenance schedule in the Service/Warranty Booklet.

Transmission

For vehicles fitted with a manual transmission; when on level roads, in an unladen condition, it is permissible to drive off in 2nd gear, in the interest of fuel economy.

Tyre pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures.

Wheel alignment

Maintain correct front and rear wheel alignment.

Warm ups and idling

Avoid long engine warm ups. They are unnecessary and waste fuel.

Avoid long engine idling.

Accelerating, driving and braking

Accelerate gently and avoid rapid starts.

Drive the vehicle at steady speeds where possible (after running-in).

Manual transmission: It is desirable to reach top gear as soon as possible, but do not force the engine to labour in top gear.

Riding the brake

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal when you do not intend to brake.

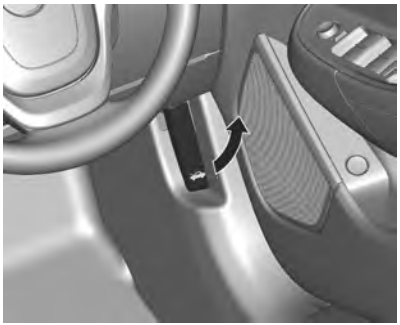
Air conditioning

Switch off the air conditioning when not required, however, once every 2 weeks, with the engine running, switch the air conditioning on for 5 to 10 minutes to lubricate the seals (even in winter).

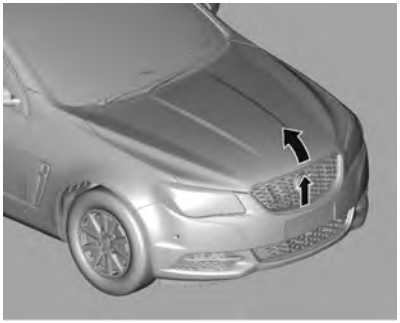
Vehicle Checks

Bonnet

Opening



Pull the lever towards you.



Push the release catch to the right and lift the bonnet. Gas struts automatically take over to lift and hold the bonnet in the open position.

Closing

⚠ Warning

To avoid injury and/or damage to the vehicle, check each time, before the bonnet is closed, that the contact area is unobstructed.

Lower the bonnet and allow it to drop into the catch. Check that the bonnet is engaged.

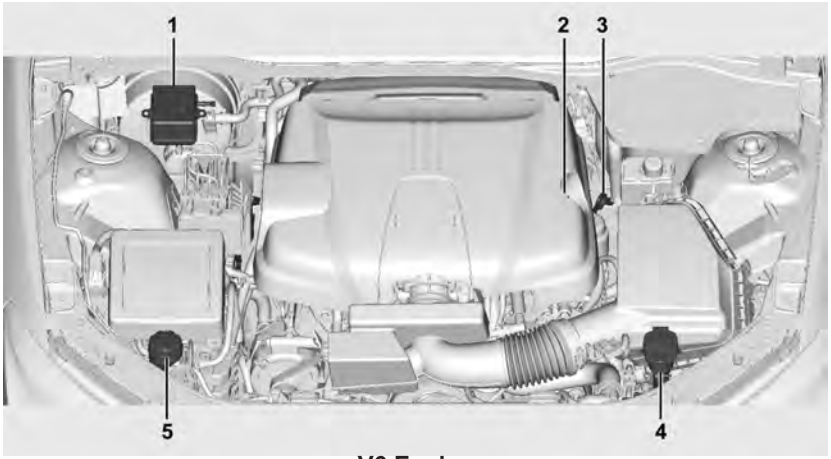
⚠ Warning

If while driving you notice that the bonnet has not been properly closed, pull the vehicle over to the side of the road at the earliest possible moment and close the bonnet correctly.

Note:

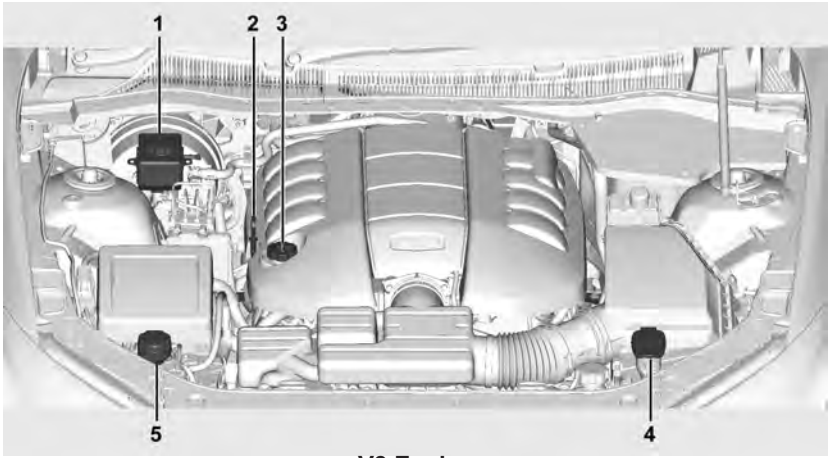
- If the wiring of the bonnet switch is damaged or tampered with, it will be detected by the vehicle control system. The alarm will sound when the alarm system is armed.
- If the bonnet is not engaged when the vehicle is locked, will flash immediately. Unlock the vehicle, close the bonnet securely and relock.

Engine Compartment Overview



V6 Engine

1. Clutch/brake fluid reservoir, see *Brake Fluid on page 10-15*
2. Engine oil filler cap, see *Engine Oil on page 10-6*
3. Dipstick for engine oil, see *Engine Oil on page 10-6*
4. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir, see *Washer Fluid on page 10-15*
5. Engine coolant reservoir, see *Engine Coolant on page 10-8*



V8 Engine

1. Clutch/brake fluid reservoir, see *Brake Fluid on page 10-15*
2. Dipstick for engine oil, see *Engine Oil on page 10-6*
3. Engine oil filler cap, see *Engine Oil on page 10-6*
4. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir, see *Washer Fluid on page 10-15*
5. Engine coolant reservoir, see *Engine Coolant on page 10-8*

Engine Cover

⚠ Warning

Do not place hands on any under bonnet components when the engine is HOT or RUNNING.

Before removing the engine cover, allow the engine to cool sufficiently.

Removal

Remove the engine cover to access the radiator cap (V6 engine).

1. Turn the ignition off and remove the key from the vehicle.
2. Place the shift lever in **P** and apply the park brake.

3. Open the bonnet. Lift the cover upwards approximately 15 cm.
4. Pull the cover towards the front of the vehicle.

Replacement

1. Place the cover over the rear guide tabs.
2. Lower the front of the cover so that the hole on the left side slides over the oil filler cap.
3. Press down on both front corners to engage the fasteners. Pull upwards on the cover to ensure it is secure.

Engine Oil

⚠ Danger

Engine oil is an irritant and if ingested can cause illness or death.

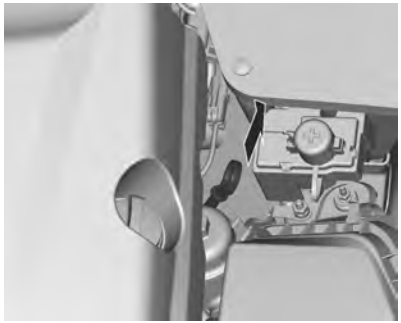
Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with skin.

Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

Checking oil level

The engine must be at operating temperature and the ignition turned off for at least 10 minutes.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.



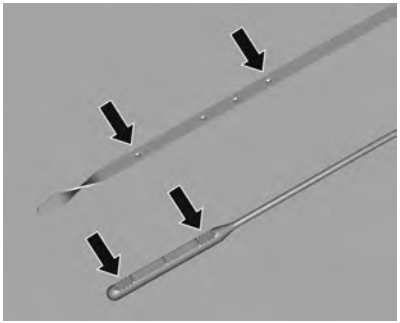
2. Remove the dipstick and wipe clean.
3. Insert the dipstick firmly.
4. Remove and read the oil level. The level should be between the lower and upper area/marks. Add oil if the level is at or below the lower area/mark.

Dilution

When a vehicle is frequently driven on short trips, the engine often fails to reach normal operating temperatures:

- The oil becomes diluted by fuel and moisture that settles in the oil pan.
- This may raise the oil level creating a false reading on the engine oil dipstick.

For example, in a vehicle that has accumulated 1,500 km of short distance or intermittent city operation and has consumed a normal amount of oil, the level may not have dropped from the upper area/mark, due to dilution. If this vehicle is driven for some distance at highway speeds the dilution elements evaporate, resulting in a sudden drop in oil level.

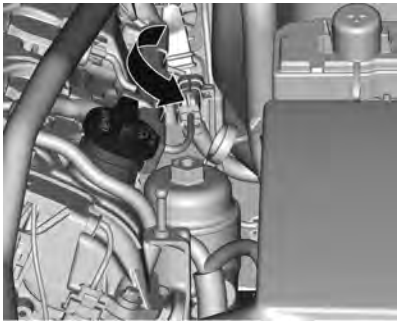


Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.

Arrows indicate the lower and upper area/marks.

Adding engine oil

See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-2* and *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-6*.



1. Rotate the engine oil filler cap anticlockwise and remove.
2. Add enough oil to reach within the upper area/mark.
3. Check the level on the dipstick and add further oil if necessary.

   The engine oil must not exceed the upper area/mark.

⚠ Caution
Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out.

4. Replace the engine oil filler cap tightly by rotating clockwise.

Note: Non-detergent and other low quality oils, the use of break-in oil, tune up compounds, friction reducing compounds and other supplemental additives are not recommended. Their use increases costs, may be detrimental to the operation of the vehicle and may void the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty, to the extent that Holden considers the non-recommended fluid to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle.

Engine oil change intervals

Refer to the Service/Warranty Booklet.

Engine Coolant

Note: For all engine variants, the coolant reservoir is in the same position within the engine compartment.

Engine coolant level

Check the coolant level at least once a week. The cap is yellow with the word **DEXCOOL**.

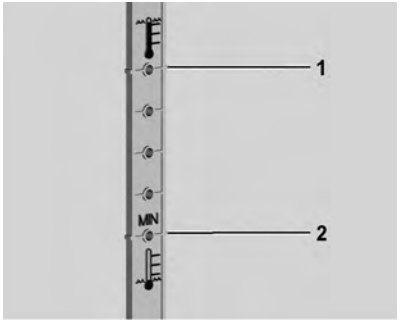
Checking coolant level

⚠ Warning

Do not remove the radiator cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure which could cause serious burns.

1. Turn the ignition off.

2. Rotate the coolant reservoir cap one-eighth of a turn anticlockwise and slowly pull out the dipstick.



3. When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be at or above the minimum mark (2). When the engine is warm, the level should be between half full and the maximum mark (1).

Adding coolant

⚠ Warning

Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with coolant.

Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

⚠ Caution

Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

For engine coolant specifications and water-to-coolant ratio, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-2*. Always use the specified ratio.

1. Mix a solution of Holden coolant and clean fresh water.
2. Add coolant into the coolant dipstick tube (where the dipstick is stored).
3. Check the level on the dipstick and add further coolant if necessary.
4. Replace the dipstick.
5. Rotate the cap one-eighth of a turn clockwise until secure and the word DEXCOOL can be read from the front of the vehicle.

In emergency situations, plain clean fresh water may be used temporarily until the correct Holden coolant is obtained. Replace as soon as possible from the nearest Holden Dealer.

If the coolant requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer.

How the engine coolant works

- The coolant contains special corrosion inhibitors.
- Coolant helps the cooling system in hot weather by increasing the boiling point.
- Coolant protects against freezing down to –37 °C, provided the specified concentration is maintained.

⚠ Warning

Corrosion inhibitors and antifreeze fluids are poisonous. Use extreme care when handling. If swallowed, seek medical attention. Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure which could cause serious burns.

If the engine overheats or loses coolant, see *Engine Overheating on page 10-10*.

Engine Overheating

⚠ Caution

Immediate action is required if the engine overheats. This is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The engine temperature gauge needle moving over to the **H**.
- An engine overheated message appearing on the DIC, see *Engine Cooling System Messages on page 5-26*.
- Steam escaping from under the bonnet.
- A loss of power.
- A loud knocking or pinging noise.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Continued driving EVEN FOR A SHORT TIME could cause engine damage. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and perform the cooling system checks.

⚠ Danger

Do not open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure which could cause serious burns. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before opening the bonnet.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

Do not remove the radiator cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure which could cause serious burns.

Do not place hands near under bonnet components as the cooling fan may start working unexpectedly even when the engine is not running and the ignition is turned off.

Cooling system checks

1. Leave the engine idling.
2. Ensure that the shift lever is in **P** or neutral and apply the park brake.
3. Exit the vehicle and audibly check that the cooling fan is working.

If the fan is working and the engine temperature gauge needle has not returned to its normal position within a few minutes:

1. Turn the ignition off and remove the key from the vehicle.
2. Check the air intake area in the front bumper to ensure that it is clear. See Air intake under *Exterior Care on page 10-59*.

⚠ Warning

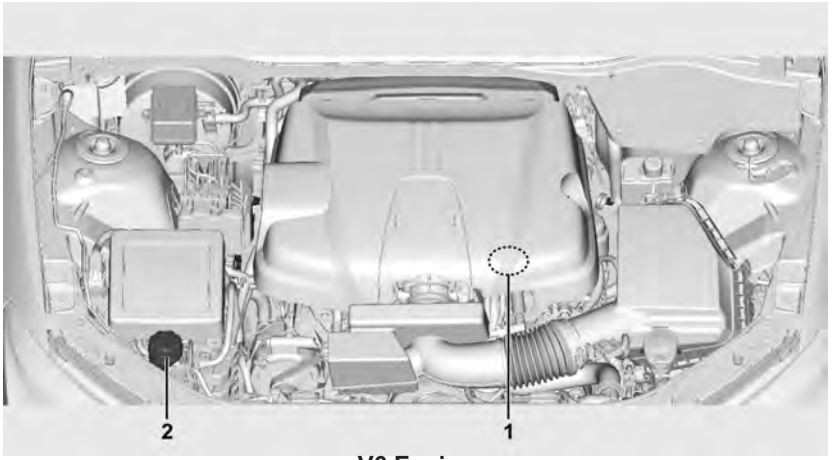
Take care when checking these areas as they may still be hot.

3. Look for leaks at the radiator hoses and connections, heater hoses and connections, radiator and water pump.
4. If you do not find anything wrong, check the engine coolant level. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-8*.
5. DO NOT run the engine until any problems have been corrected.

Low coolant level

⚠ Danger

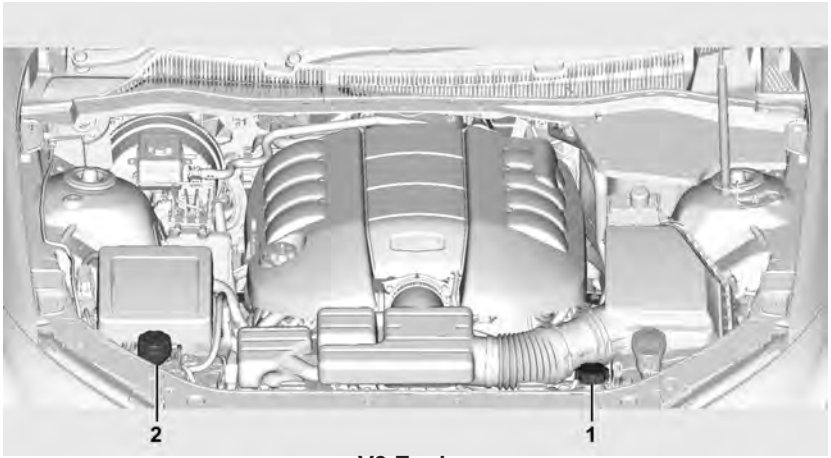
Do not remove the radiator cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure which could cause serious burns.



V6 Engine

When the engine is cool, check the coolant reservoir level and radiator level and fill as follows:

Note: For all engine variants, the coolant reservoir is in the same position within the engine compartment.



V8 Engine

1. Check the coolant reservoir level (2). Add coolant if low. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-8*.

⚠ Danger

Do not remove the radiator cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure which could cause serious burns.

Remove the engine cover if required. See *Engine Cover on page 10-5*.

2. Locate the radiator cap (1).

   On V6 variants, remove the engine cover. See *Engine Cover on page 10-5*.

3. Cover the cap with a thick cloth and rotate slowly anticlockwise to remove.

⚠ Caution

Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

4. As well as adding coolant to the coolant reservoir, add coolant directly through the radiator cap opening until full.
5. Wait 30 seconds for the coolant to settle.
6. Add more coolant if the level drops.

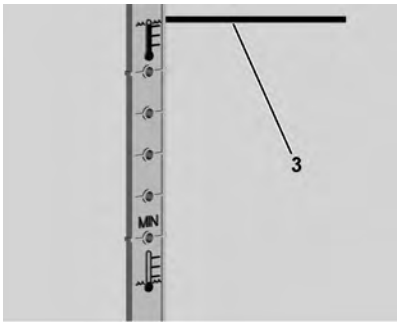
⚠ Caution

Take care not to spill coolant on the accessory drive belts.

If a spill occurs, rinse the belts immediately with fresh water.

7. Start the engine.
8. Add coolant through the radiator cap opening until full.

   Wait 30 seconds and top up if the level drops.
9. Replace the radiator cap.
10. Turn the ignition off.



11. Check the coolant reservoir dipstick and add further coolant if necessary, up to level (3).

Note: Filling to this level provides additional coolant to allow for any air that may remain in the cooling system.

Check the coolant reservoir level for the next two days.

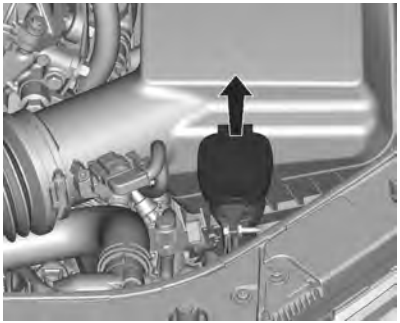
If the coolant requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer.

Note: The following may cause the engine to temporarily operate at high temperatures, especially on hot days:

- Climbing a long hill.
- Stopping immediately after high speed driving.
- Idling for long periods in traffic.
- Towing a heavily laden trailer or caravan.

If the engine temperature gauge shows H, switch off the air conditioning.

Washer Fluid



The washer fluid reservoir supplies water to the front windscreen washer.

Check the fluid level weekly.

Adding washer fluid

1. Use the correct amount of washer fluid additive. Refer to a Holden Dealer.

   Do not use ordinary soap or detergent as they froth up and damage the wiper rubbers.

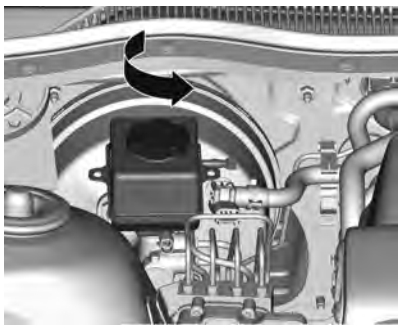
2. Secure the cap.

Brake Fluid

(Automatic transmission)

> **⚠ Warning**
>
> Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive and will damage the paint finish of the vehicle if spilt.

Checking the brake fluid level



Check the brake fluid level weekly.

The level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** area.

If the fluid level is correct, do not remove the reservoir cap, as brake fluid exposed to the atmosphere will quickly absorb moisture.

Adding brake fluid

Use heavy duty brake fluid. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-2*.

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Wipe the sides of the cap clean.
3. Rotate anticlockwise to remove.
4. Top up with heavy duty brake fluid.

> **⚠ Warning**
>
> Using brake fluid other than GM recommended brake fluid may cause corrosion to components of the braking system and reduced braking performance.
>
> (Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Use only new brake fluid. Use of old, used or inferior brake fluid may endanger the functioning of the brake system.

5. Secure the cap and clean up any spilt fluid.

If the brake fluid requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer immediately.

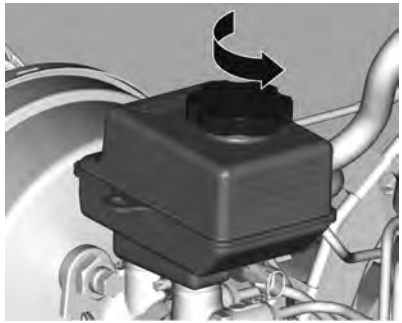
Clutch/brake fluid

(Manual transmission)

⚠ Warning

Clutch/brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive and will damage the paint finish of the vehicle if spilt.

Checking the clutch/brake fluid level



Check the clutch/brake fluid reservoir weekly.

The level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** area.

If the fluid level is correct, do not remove the reservoir cap, as brake fluid exposed to the atmosphere will quickly absorb moisture.

Adding clutch/brake fluid

Use heavy duty brake fluid. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-2*.

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Wipe the sides of the cap clean.
3. Rotate anticlockwise to remove.
4. Top up with heavy duty brake fluid.

⚠ Warning

Using brake fluid other than GM recommended brake fluid may cause corrosion to components of the braking system and reduced braking performance.

Use only new brake fluid. Use of old, used or inferior brake fluid may endanger the functioning of the brake system.

5. Secure the cap and clean up any spilt fluid.

If the clutch/brake fluid requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer immediately.

Battery

⚠ Warning

Batteries emit an explosive gas mixture which may be ignited. Therefore, you should keep sparks and flames away from the battery at all times. Never smoke near a battery.

Batteries contain sulphuric acid. If acid contacts skin or clothing, flush immediately with plenty of water. In case of eye contact, flush with plenty of water and contact a doctor immediately. Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash off immediately.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Take care with all metal objects and tools including items you may wear (for example jewellery, rings and metal watch bands) near battery terminals.

Battery replacement

⚠ Warning

A specifically developed battery with a ventilation system is required for this vehicle. Any other standard battery may cause explosive gases to enter the passenger cabin.

Do not remove the caps on the top of the battery. The battery supplied in the vehicle is maintenance free and does not require checking or filling.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

The battery vent tube must be installed correctly to ensure the explosive gases are vented outside the vehicle.

Only use a manufacturer recommended battery as a replacement, otherwise the electric power management (EPM) system may not operate correctly.

For replacement, refer to a Holden Dealer or authorised repairer.

The battery is located inside the passenger cabin, behind the passenger seat. It is secured behind a small access panel.

Battery disconnection

The battery may discharge if the vehicle is not used for approximately six weeks.

If the battery is disconnected it may discharge after approximately 12 weeks. Trickle feed on a battery charger overnight, before installing back into the vehicle.

If the battery is disconnected:

- Some trip computer displays will be reset.
- Some personal identity key settings may be forgotten. The driver's settings will be remembered the next time the features are adjusted. See “Personal identity keys” under *Keys on page 2-1*.

For emergency starting when the battery is flat, see *Jump Starting on page 10-56*.

Bulb Replacement

Contact a trained service technician if unsure about the bulb replacement process.

When replacing bulbs:

- Turn the ignition off and remove the key from the vehicle.
- Turn off related switches.
- Fit bulbs of the specified wattage only.
- Do not touch bulbs or reflectors with bare hands.
- Clean stained bulbs with methylated spirits.

Bulbs to be changed by a Holden Dealer

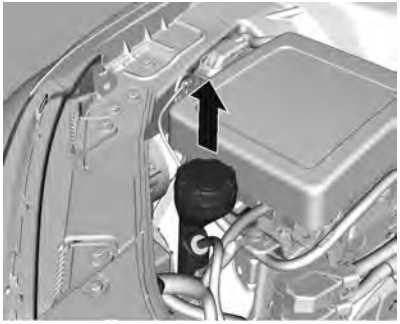
- Fog lamps
- Instrument panel lamps
- Side indicator lamps
- Rear high level brake lamp
- Interior dome lamps
- Load area illumination lamp

⚠ Caution

Condensation may temporarily appear on the inside of exterior lamp lenses after rain or washing the vehicle. Condensation occurs when there is a temperature difference between the inside and outside of the lamp allowing a fine mist on the inside surface of the lamp lens. This condensation will disappear when the vehicle is in a dry environment or the lamp is on. If water does collect in the lamp contact a Holden Dealer.

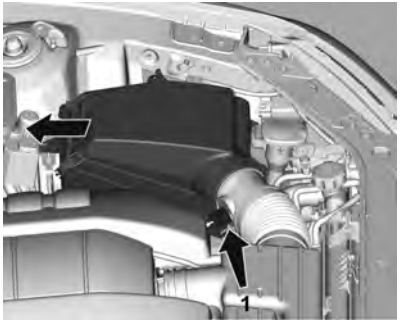
Headlamps

Front lamp access



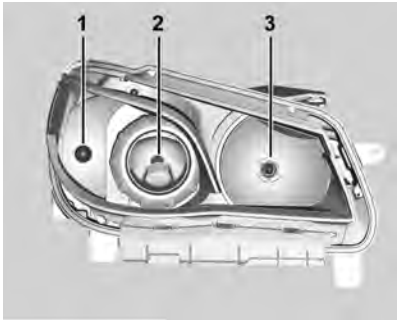
1. Open the bonnet.
2. Locate the coolant reservoir to access driver side:
   - Front park bulb
   - Low beam bulb
   - High beam bulb
3. Pull up on the coolant reservoir filler neck (including the cap).
4. Drain the filler neck before pulling out.

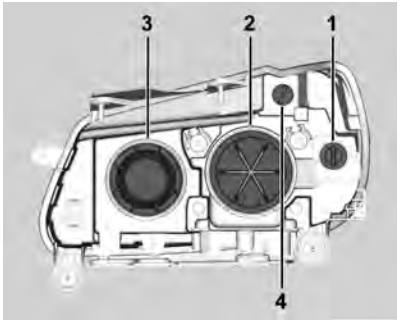
   Place a clean rag over the opening of the coolant reservoir.



1. Open the bonnet.
2. Locate the air filter box to access passenger side:
   - Front park bulb
   - Low beam bulb
   - High beam bulb
3. Unclip the air filter box cover and move rearward.
4. Disconnect the air flow meter connector (1) (V8 only).

Front lamp assembly



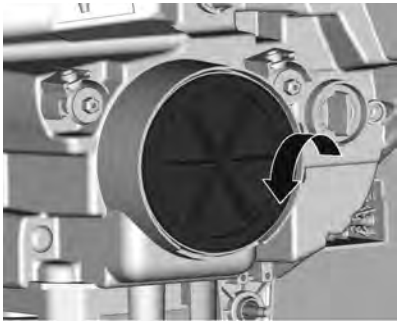


Driver side shown

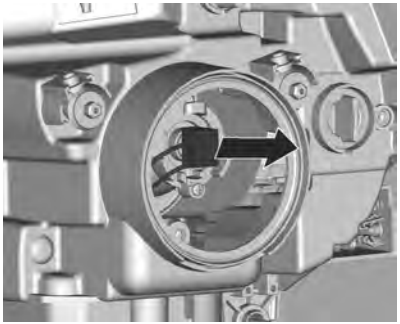
1. Front turn signal lamp (WY21W bulb)
2. Headlamp outboard low beam (H7LL bulb)
3. Headlamp inboard high beam (H9 bulb, 60W)
4. Park lamps (W5W bulb)

Outboard low beam

1. To access the headlamps, follow the steps in “Front lamp access” earlier in this section.

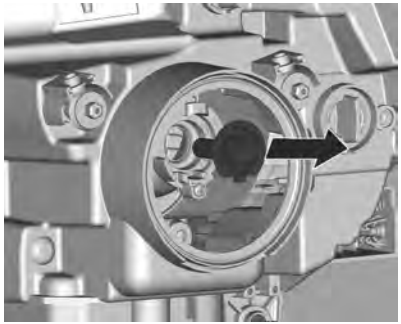


2. Rotate the outboard dust cap anticlockwise and remove.



3. Pull to remove the wiring harness connector from the rear of the bulb.
4. Press and unclip the bulb spring retainer and pivot clear of the bulb.

Note: Check the orientation of the bulb tang for replacement.

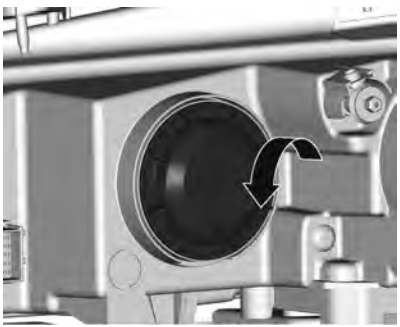


5. Remove the bulb from the headlamp.
6. Fit the new bulb into the headlamp ensuring the location tang is located correctly.

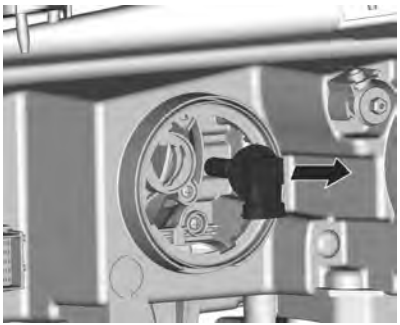
7. Refit the bulb spring retainer into its original position.
8. Install the wiring harness connector and dust cap.
9. Install components removed in Step 1.
10. Check lamp operation.

Inboard high beam

1. To access the headlamps, follow the steps in “Front lamp access” earlier in this section.



2. Rotate the inboard dust cap anticlockwise and remove.
3. Remove the wiring harness connector by squeezing the two tangs on the harness connector and pulling the connector downwards.



4. Twist the bulb anticlockwise to remove.

Note: The different sized locating tangs on the bulb base allow the bulb to sit correctly into the headlamp in one position only.

5. Twist the bulb clockwise to install.
6. Install the wiring harness connector and dust cap.
7. Install components removed in Step 1.
8. Check lamp operation.

Park lamps

Front park lamps

1. To access the headlamps, follow the steps in “Front lamp access” earlier in this section.

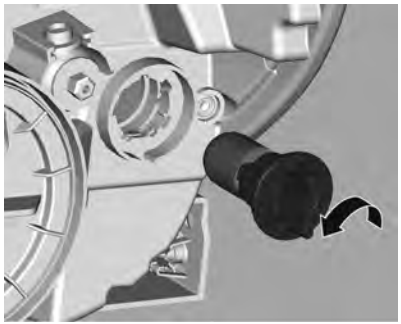
2. Remove the park lamp bulb holder by rotating anticlockwise.

3. Remove the park lamp bulb by pulling it straight out of the holder.
4. Insert the new bulb into the holder.
5. Install the holder by rotating clockwise.
6. Install components removed in Step 1.
7. Check lamp operation.

Front Turn Signal Lamps

1. The front turn signal lamps are accessed by loosening the wheel arch liner.

2. Using the torx tool from the toolkit, see *Tools on page 10-35*, remove the six screws at the front of the wheel arch liner.
3. Dislodge the wheel arch liner to provide access to the rear of the front lamp.



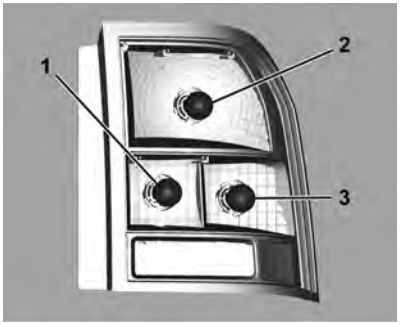
4. Remove the turn signal bulb holder by rotating anticlockwise.
5. Remove the turn signal bulb by pulling it straight out of the holder.
6. Insert the new bulb into the holder.

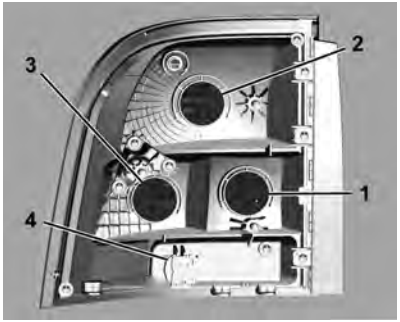
   Ensure that the same colour bulb is used.
7. Install the holder by rotating clockwise.
8. Check lamp operation.

9. Refit the wheel arch liner and stow the torx tool.

Tail lamps

Tail lamp assembly

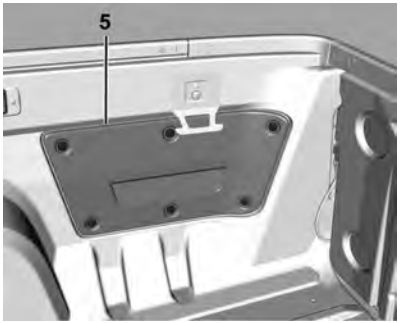


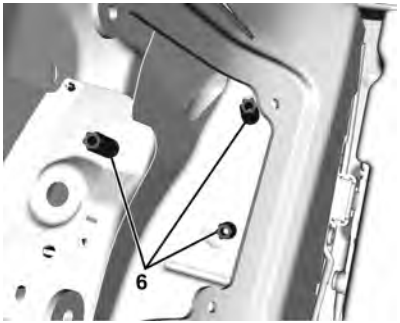


Driver side shown

1. Reverse lamp (P21W bulb)
2. Brake/tail lamp (P21/5W bulb)
3. Turn signal lamp (PY21W amber bulb)
4. Rear lamp wiring connector

Tail lamp access

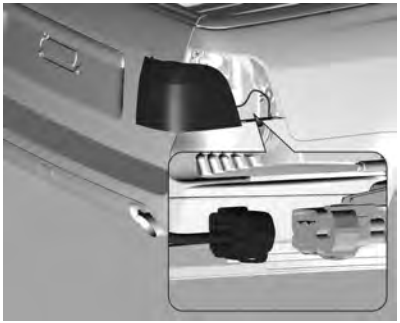




To gain access to the rear turn signal, stop/tail and reverse bulbs:

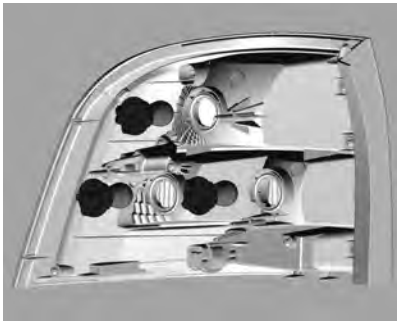
1. Remove the six scrivets and the access panel (5).

   Use a flat-blade screwdriver to prise outwards under the head of the centre pin of the scrivet.
2. Undo the three lamp assembly securing nuts (6).
3. Carefully remove the lamp assembly from the vehicle.



4. From the rear of the lamp disconnect the wiring connector.

   Push the tab at the bottom of the connector to remove.



To replace the bulbs:

1. From the rear of the assembly, rotate the bulb holder anticlockwise to release it from its housing.
2. Lightly press the bulb and twist anticlockwise out of the holder.
3. Install the new bulb by pushing it into the holder and rotating it clockwise.

   Ensure that the same colour bulb is used.
4. Install the bulb holder into the lamp.
5. Install the components removed in Step 1.
6. Carefully tighten the three plastic lamp assembly securing nuts to 2.0 to 4.0 N•m.

   Do not overtighten.
7. Check lamp operation.

Number Plate Lamp

(W5W bulb)

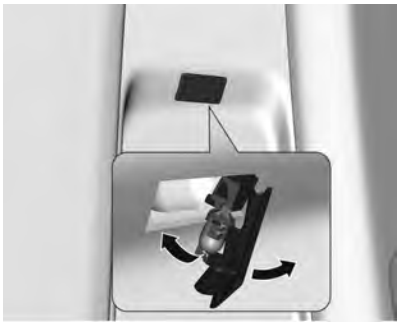
1. Push the left hand side of the lamp towards the right hand side.
2. Remove the lamp from the opening by pivoting the lamp downwards.
3. Remove the bulb holder from the lamp by rotating the bulb holder anticlockwise.
4. Pull the bulb out of the bulb holder.
5. Push the new bulb into the bulb holder.
6. Install the bulb holder into the lamp by rotating the bulb holder clockwise.
7. Insert the right hand side of the lamp into the opening and pivot the lamp upwards into position.
8. Push on the left hand side of the lamp until the clip engages.
9. Check lamp operation.

Interior Lamps

Cabin storage lamp

(Festoon bulb, 5W)

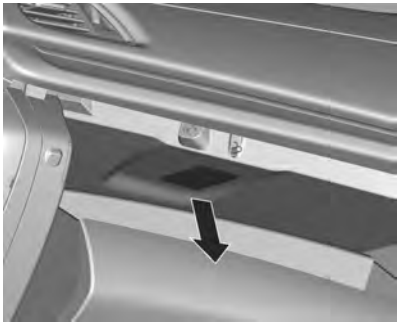
The vehicle may have cabin storage lamps.



1. Gently prise away the lens housing with a fine flat-blade screwdriver.
2. Pull the tab holding the bulb (opposite end to wiring) backwards and pull the bulb out.
3. To install the new bulb, pull the tab backwards.
4. When the new bulb is in place, feed the wiring back into the cavity and push the lens housing back into place.

Glove box lamp

(5W bulb)



1. Open the glove box.
2. Remove the lens housing with a fine flat-blade screwdriver.
3. Pull the bulb out of the bulb holder.
4. Push the new bulb into the bulb holder.
5. When the new bulb is in place, feed the wiring back into the cavity and push the lens housing back into place.

Electrical System

Fuses

⚠ Warning

Turn off the ignition and any electrical equipment before changing a fuse.

A fuse puller is provided in the rear fuse panel, which can be used on each of the three fuse panels.

Spare fuses of various ratings are provided in the rear and engine compartment fuse/relay boxes.

Replace blown fuses promptly.

Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same amperage.

The amperage is shown on the fuse's head:

Colour	Rating (amps)
Grey	2
Tan	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
Natural	25
Green	30

Replace the fuse cover securely after use.

⚠ Warning

When replacing a fuse be sure to use a fuse of the specified amperage.

Never install a wire or similar, in place of a fuse, as it could damage electrical components and cause a fire.

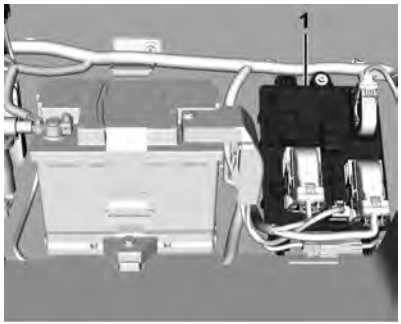
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Any improper alterations to the electrical system may cause a fire hazard and engine damage. To maintain your own safety and that of the vehicle, have any work involving the electrical system or the replacement of high current fuses or relays carried out by a Dealer.

Fuses and relays

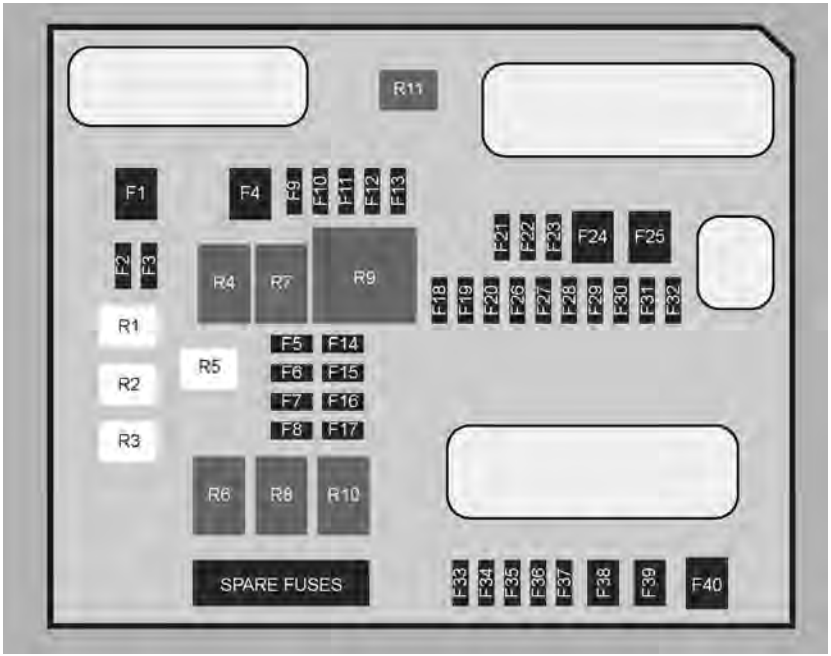
Rear fuse panel



The rear fuse panel (1) is located behind the passenger seat to the side of the battery.

To locate, lift up the access flap.

Fuse and relay index



The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays and features shown.

Fuses

F1	DRIVER FRONT / LH REAR WINDOW	30A
F2	EMER / VEH / ACCY	10A
F3	BOOT RELEASE	15A
F4	PASSIVE ENTRY PASSIVE START-BATT 2	30A
F5	RADIO	15A
F6	-	-
F7	-	-
F8	FUEL SYSTEM CONTROL MODULE	20A
F9	MRTD	30A
F10	DECKLID FLASHING LAMPS / EDI MODULE	20A

F11	AUXILIARY BATTERY	10A
F12	-	-
F13	-	-
F14	REAR SEAT ENTERTAINMENT	10A
F15	AUTOMATIC HEADLAMP LEVELLING	15A
F16	-	-
F17	EXHAUST VALVE	20A
F18	ONSTAR	10A
F19	MIRROR / WINDOW MODULE	5A
F20	CANISTER VENT SOLENOID	10A
F21	PASSIVE ENTRY PASSIVE START-BATT 1	5A
F22	MEMORY SEAT MODULE	10A
F23	AMPLIFIER	30A
F24	PASSENGER FRONT / RH REAR WINDOW	30A
F25	ELECTRIC PARK BRAKE	30A
F26	TAILGATE MODULE	10A
F27	CAMERA IGN	10A
F28	FRT VENT SEAT IGN	15A
F29	TRAILER MODULE IGN	10A
F30	ADVANCED PARK ASSIST / SIDE BLIND ZONE ALERT	15A
F31	ENGINE CONTROL MODULE	10A
F32	AUXILIARY GAUGES	10A
F33	RETAINED ACCESSORY POWER	10A
F34	BATTERY VOLTAGE SENSING	5A
F35	TAILGATE MOTOR	30A
F36	REAR ACCESSORY POWER OUTLET	20A
F37	INTERIOR ACCESSORY POWER OUTLET	20A
F38	FRT / LTR	20A
F39	-	-
F40	TRAILER MODULE	40A

Relays

R1	BOOT RELEASE
R2	ACCESSORY
R3	-
R4	RUN
R5	-
R6	RETAINED ACCESSORY POWER

R7	LOGISTICS MODE
R8	-
R9	-
R10	EXHAUST VALVE
R11	-

Note: Relays R1, R2, R3 and R5 are PCB mounted relays and are not replaceable.

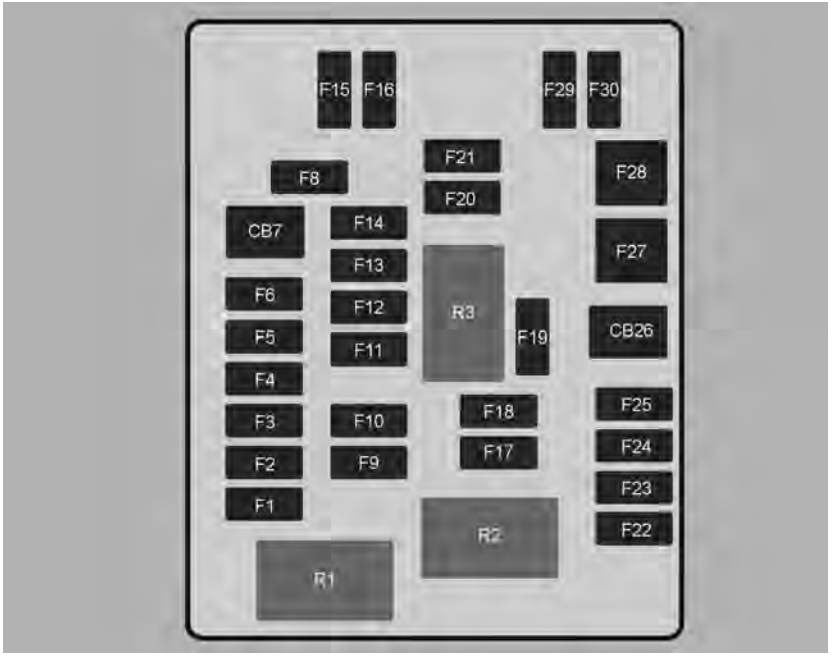
Cabin fuse panel

Removing fuse panel cover

Insert a screwdriver in the slot indicated and lever off the fuse panel cover.

Refitting fuse panel cover

1. Insert the rear edge of the fuse panel cover under the door seal.
2. Locate the hooks on the cover into the end of the instrument panel.
3. Rotate and push the cover back into position.



Cabin fuse and relay index

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays and features shown.

Fuses

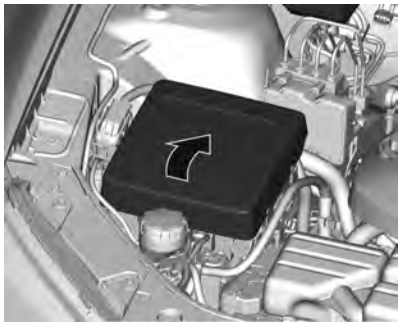
F1	BODY CONTROL MODULE 1	15A
F2	DIAGNOSTIC LINK CONNECTOR	10A
F3	LPG SHUT-OFF SOLENOID	30A
F4	BODY CONTROL MODULE 2	15A
F5	IGNITION SWITCH	2A
F6	ELECTRIC STEERING CONTROL LOCK	15A
CB7	-	-
F8	-	-
F9	-	-
F10	-	-
F11	SHUNT 1	30A

F12	AIRBAG / AOS	10A
F13	INSTRUMENT CLUSTER	15A
F14	HVAC CONTROL MODULE	15A
F15	RAIN SENSOR	10A
F16	BODY CONTROL MODULE 3	15A
F17	LPG SHUT-OFF SOLENOID	15A
F18	-	-
F19	SWC BACKLIGHT	2A
F20	-	-
F21	-	-
F22	SHUNT 2	30A
F23	BODY CONTROL MODULE 4	15A
F24	BODY CONTROL MODULE 5	15A
F25	BODY CONTROL MODULE 6	10A
CB26	-	-
F27	BODY CONTROL MODULE 8	30A
F28	BLOWER FAN	40A
F29	ACCESSORIES	15A
F30	BODY CONTROL MODULE 7	15A

Relays

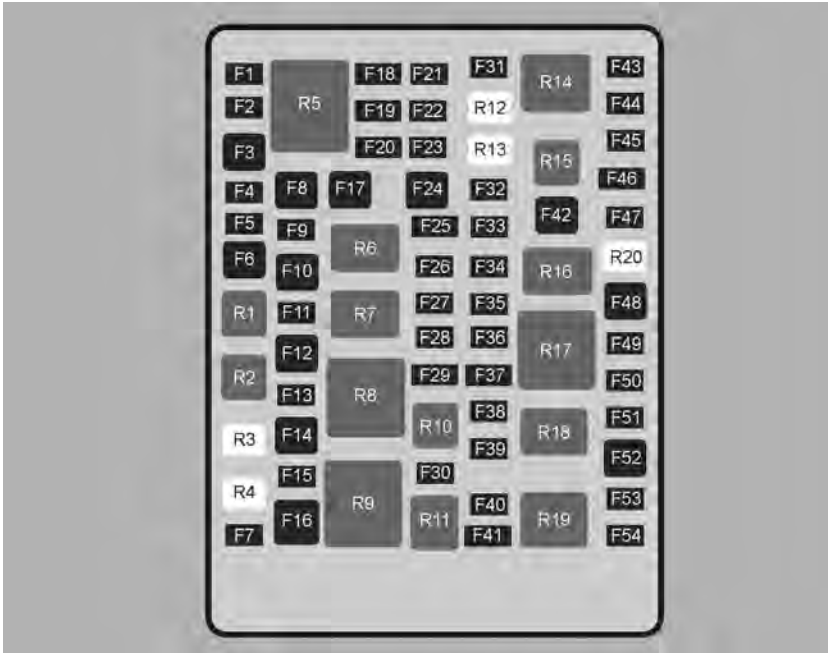
R1	LOGISTICS MODE
R2	LPG SHUT-OFF SOLENOID 1
R3	LPG SHUT-OFF SOLENOID 2

Engine compartment fuse panel



Remove the clip-on cover on the main fuse/relay box to access.

Ensure the cover is replaced securely.



Engine compartment fuse and relay index

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays and features shown.

F1	HEATED MIRRORS	10A
F2	-	-
F3	REAR DEMISTER	30A
F4	-	-
F5	SPOT LAMP RH	15A
F6	DRIVER POWER SEAT	30A
F7	WASHER PUMP	20A
F8	PASSENGER POWER SEAT	30A
F9	EMER / VEH / FT / LP	15A
F10	-	-
F11	DRIVING LAMPS	20A
F12	HEADLAMP WASHER	25A

F13	SPOT LAMP LH	15A
F14	ABS PUMP	60A
F15	ABS VALVES	30A
F16	-	-
F17	-	-
F18	HEATED FRONT SEATS	15A
F19	-	-
F20	-	-
F21	FRONT PASSENGER WINDOW SWITCH	7.5A
F22	REAR WIPER	20A
F23	SUNROOF	20A
F24	FRONT WIPERS	30A
F25	AOS IGN / IPC IGN	5A
F26	LRBEC IGN	20A
F27	-	-
F28	IGN / INJ EVEN - V8	20A
F29	ECM-V8, IGN ODD-V6 / EMIS 1	15A
F30	-	-
F31	-	-
F32	FOG LAMPS	15A
F33	IGNITION-IP / BODY	10A
F34	FUEL SYSTEM CONTROL MODULE IGNITION	10A
F35	-	-
F36	ESCL	5A
F37	EMIS 2 / IGN EVEN-V6	15A
F38	ECM-V6, INJ / IGN ODD-V8	20A
F39	INCLR PUMP	10A
F40	-	-
F41	TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE / ELECTRIC POWER STEERING	15A
F42	STARTER MOTOR	30A
F43	-	-
F44	LH HID HEADLAMP	15A
F45	RH HID HEADLAMP	15A
F46	LH & RH HI BEAM HEADLAMP	10A
F47	HORN	15A
F48	ENGINE COOLING FAN	60A
F49	AUTOMATIC HEADLAMP LEVELLING	10A
F50	TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE IGN	15A
F51	ENGINE CONTROL MODULE IGN	15A

F52	BRAKE VACUUM PUMP	30A
F53	AIR CONDITIONING COMPRESSOR CLUTCH	10A
F54	VAPORISER CONTROL MODULE	10A

Relays

R1	DRIVING LAMPS
R2	HEADLAMP WASHER
R3	REAR WASHER PUMP
R4	FRONT WASHER PUMP
R5	REAR DEMISTER
R6	FRONT WIPER CONTROL
R7	WIPER SPEED
R8	ENGINE CONTROL MODULE
R9	-
R10	INCLR PUMP
R11	-
R12	REAR WIPER CONTROL
R13	FOG LAMPS
R14	LOW BEAM HEADLAMPS
R15	HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS
R16	STARTER
R17	RUN / CRANK
R18	BRAKE VACUUM PUMP
R19	AIR-CONDITIONING CONTROL
R20	HORN

Note: Relays R3, R4, R12, R13 and R20 are PCB mounted relays and are not replaceable.

Vehicle Tools

Tools

The jack and tools are located behind the driver seat.

Headlamp tool

The vehicle may have a torx tool for use when replacing the front headlamp bulbs. See *Bulb Replacement on page 10-18*.

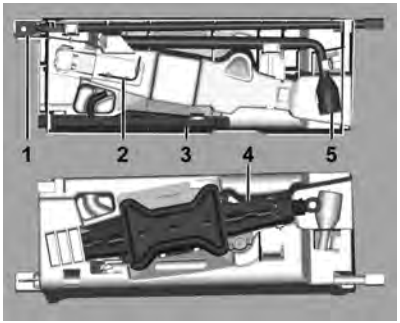
This tool is stored with the emergency tyre sealant and air compressor kit or with the jack and wheel wrench package.

Spare wheel

The vehicle may have a spare wheel located beneath the load area.

Tyre repair kit

The vehicle may have an emergency tyre sealant and air compressor kit in place of the jack, tools and spare tyre. It is located behind the driver's seat. See “Tyre sealant and air compressor kit” under *Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit on page 10-40*.

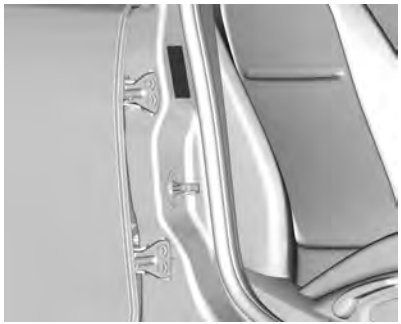


1. Extension bar
2. Torx tool
3. Jack handle
4. Jack
5. Wheel wrench

Wheels and Tyres

Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures to avoid increased fuel consumption, uneven and premature tyre wear.



The correct pressures for tyres are shown on the tyre placard in the driver's door opening (B pillar) and in the tyre pressure table. See *Tyre Pressure on page 12-7*.

The front tyre pressures are shown in the left column and the rear tyre pressures are shown in the right column.

The placard may display the tyre size and pressures using the following icons:

: Tyre size, minimum load rating, minimum speed rating

: Tyre pressure at normal load

: Tyre pressure at maximum load

: Spare tyre pressures.

Note: Full size spare: set to tyre pressure.

- Tyre pressure should be checked when cold as tyre pressure will increase as the tyres warm up.
- Check the air pressure of tyres (including the spare) weekly, to ensure occupant safety, as well as reducing fuel consumption and increasing the life of the tyres.
- Check pressures when the vehicle has been stationary for over 3 hours. If tyre pressures must be checked immediately after driving more than 2 km, increase tyre placard pressure by 10%.
- Use a tyre pressure gauge to check the tyres. Simply looking at the tyres is not sufficient.
- Replace any valve dust caps or extensions.
- Check the condition of the tyre tread and inspect for stones or abnormal wear.
- For constant long distance or rough road driving, daily checking is recommended.
- Tyre pressures may need to be increased depending on the load on the vehicle. See *Vehicle Weight on page 12-5*.
- If the vehicle is loaded to half the maximum payload, the tyres should be inflated half way between the minimum and maximum pressures given on the tyre placard.

Low profile sports tyres

The vehicle may have low profile tyres.

Low profile tyres are expected to experience greater wear than conventional tyres, depending on driving conditions.

Follow the tyre care and maintenance instructions to maximise the life of the tyres.

Tread Depth

Replace the tyres when:

- They are worn to the point where the tread indicators appear.

  The tyres originally fitted to the vehicle have built-in tread indicators. When only 1.5 mm of tread remains, these indicators show as plain bars across the tread pattern at regular intervals around the tyre.
- The tread or sidewall is cut, split, or cracked deep enough to expose the cord or fabric.
- The tyre has a bump or bulge in it, indicating some kind of internal damage.
- The tyre has a puncture, cut or other damage which cannot be repaired because of the size or location of the damage.
- The cord or fabric is showing.

⚠ Warning

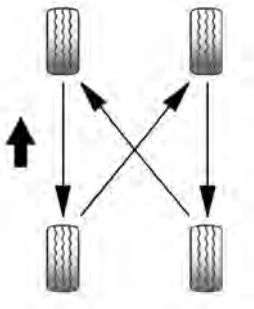
Do not attempt to drive on a flat tyre more than is necessary to stop safely. Driving even a short distance can damage the tyre and wheel beyond repair. Tyres which have been repaired or retreaded are not capable of being driven safely at high speeds. Therefore, their use is not recommended.

Tyre Rotation

It is recommended that you:

- Rotate tyres approximately every year or 15,000 km, whichever occurs first.

  Driving conditions, driving techniques, vehicle loading and weather may warrant more frequent tyre checks and rotation.



Front and rear tyres can wear differently depending on:

- Types of roads driven on
- Driving habits
- Tyre pressures
- Wheel alignment and balance

New tyres should be fitted in pairs to the front. If replacing only one tyre, pair it on the same axle with the least worn of the other three.

⚠ Warning

Vehicles fitted with different size tyres on the front and rear axles cannot be rotated.

Buying New Tyres

Refer to the tyre placard on the vehicle for tyre size and load rating.

Using a different size or type of tyre may affect:

- Ride
- Handling
- Speedometer accuracy
- Vehicle ground clearance
- Vehicle payload capacity
- Maximum vehicle speed
- Tyre clearance
- Snow chain clearance

Tyres with heavy treads and those made for better grip in the wet, should only be operated within the limits recommended by the manufacturer.

Tyres with a higher speed or load rating are acceptable, provided they are fitted to a suitable rim size.

⚠ Warning

Tyres with a lower speed or load rating are NOT acceptable for fitment to the vehicle.

Replacing the factory fitted wheels and tyres with non-genuine wheels and tyres may affect the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty as well as the vehicle's insurance policy.

Contact a Holden Dealer for advice on suitable tyres.

Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance

Improper wheel alignment or balance can cause:

- Tyres to wear fast and unevenly
- The vehicle to pull to one side
- Vibration

If any of these problems exists, have the vehicle checked by a Holden Dealer.

Tyre condition is checked when the vehicle is serviced by a Holden Dealer. They are able to diagnose any unusual signs of wear. If tyres are rotated, it is recommended that balance be checked at the same time.

Tyre Chains

Due to lack of clearance, tyre chains cannot be fitted to vehicles equipped with the following wheel and tyre configurations:

- 245/45R18 18 x 8
- 245/40R19 19 x 8
- 245/40R19 19 x 8.5
- 245/35R20 20 x 8
- 245/35R20 20 x 8.5
- 275/35R19 19 x 9

If these vehicles need to be driven in the snow, consider changing to the following wheel and tyre configuration:

- 225/60R16 16 x 7

  (suitable for V6 vehicles only)

Note: Redline vehicles cannot be fitted with smaller wheels to allow for tyre chain fitment.

Tyre chains should be fitted only on the rear wheels.

Remove valve extensions that contact parts of the chain.

⚠ Warning

Tyre chains may only be used at speeds up to 50 km/h. Tyre chains should only be used for short distances if the roads are not snow covered. The hard road surface causes rapid wear and the chain may break. Tyre chain links should not be thicker than 13 mm and the clasp should be well away from the bodywork. Thicker chains may damage the vehicle body.

Check the tyre placard for correct tyre pressures. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-36*.

Whenever tyre chains are fitted, switch off the ESC. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-18*.

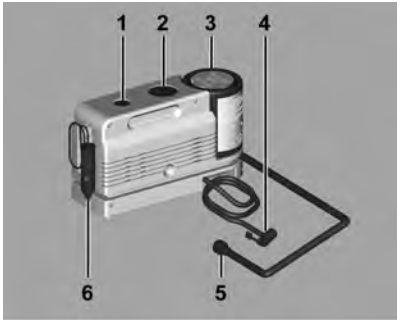
Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit

The vehicle may have an emergency tyre sealant and air compressor kit, in place of the jack, tools and spare tyre. It is located behind the driver's seat.

The tyre sealant and air compressor kit can be used to temporarily seal a small puncture up to 6 mm in the tread area of the tyre. It can also be used to inflate an underinflated tyre.

The vehicle must be driven for 8 km after the tyre is sealed and inflated to the recommended pressure, to ensure the sealant is distributed evenly.

Take the vehicle to a Holden Dealer to have the tyre repaired or replaced as soon as possible.



Tyre sealant

The sealant cannot seal sidewall damage, large punctures, or a tyre that has unseated from the wheel.

Follow the safety instructions on the tyre sealant canister.

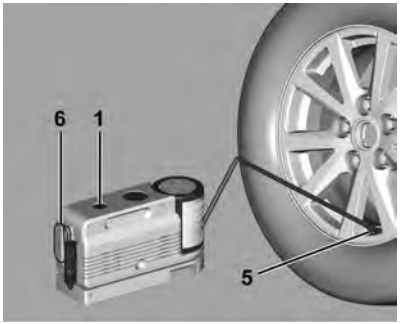
Check the expiry date on the tyre sealant canister before use. The tyre sealant canister must be replaced before its expiry date.

There is only enough sealant to seal one tyre.

After usage, the tyre sealant canister and sealant-air delivery hose must be replaced as an assembly.

Replacement tyre sealant canisters are available from a Holden Dealer.

Temporary puncture repair



1. Passengers must exit the vehicle.
2. Inspect the damaged tyre.

   Do not remove any objects that have penetrated the tyre.
3. Unwrap the sealant-air delivery hose (5) from the side of the compressor.
4. Remove the 12 volt power connection (6) from the kit.

   Do not connect to the power socket yet.
5. Unscrew the tyre valve cap anticlockwise and remove.
6. Attach the sealant-air delivery hose (5) onto the tyre valve. Rotate it clockwise until tight.
7. Switch the on/off switch (1) to the **O** position.
8. Plug the 12 volt power connection into the vehicle power socket. See *Power Outlets on page 5-8*.

   Do not jam the 12 volt power connection cable in the door or window.
9. Start the engine and let it idle to ensure the battery does not run down.

⚠ Warning

Do not run the engine in an enclosed area or with passengers in the vehicle. See *Fuel on page 9-39* for exhaust gas warnings.

10. Switch the on/off switch (1) to the **I** position.

    The kit will begin to inject sealant and air into the tyre.

    Sealant may leak from the puncture hole until the vehicle is driven and the hole has sealed.

11. Check the air pressure gauge (2).

    If there is no pressure reading while the compressor is running, check for leaks at the connection between the tyre valve and the sealant-air delivery hose (5).

12. Inflate the tyre to the inflation pressure on the tyre placard. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-36*.

    The pressure gauge (2) will initially read high while the compressor injects the sealant into the tyre. Once the sealant injection is complete, the pressure will quickly drop. It will start to rise again as the tyre inflates with air.

⚠ Warning

Do not over inflate tyres due to risk of injury or damage to the tyre. Refer to the tyre placard for recommended inflation pressure.

13. Switch the compressor off to get an accurate reading.

    The pressure gauge (2) reads slightly high while the compressor is on.

    The compressor may be switched on and off until the correct pressure is reached.

14. Switch the on/off switch (1) to the **O** position.

Note: The tyre is not sealed and will continue to leak air until the vehicle is driven and the sealant is distributed in the tyre.

⚠ Warning

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 15 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant and air compressor kit cannot inflate the tyre. Disconnect and stow the tyre sealant and air compressor kit back in its original position. Contact a Holden Dealer.

⚠ Warning

Be careful when handling the tyre sealant and air compressor kit as they may be hot after usage.

15. Unplug the 12 volt power connection (6) from the power socket.
16. Rotate the sealant-air delivery hose (5) anticlockwise and remove.
17. Replace the tyre valve cap.
18. Place the tyre sealant and air compressor kit back behind the driver's seat.

⚠ Warning

Always stow the tyre sealant and air compressor kit in its original position. Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury during heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or a collision.

19. After inflating the tyre, remove the maximum speed label and place it in a visible location.

    It reminds you to drive cautiously and not to exceed 90 km/h until the damaged tyre is replaced or repaired.
20. Drive the vehicle immediately for at least 8 km to distribute the sealant evenly within the tyre.
21. Stop at a safe location to check the tyre pressure. To inflate tyres without sealant, see “Inflating tyres without sealant” later in this section.
22. If the tyre pressure has fallen more than 10 psi (68 kPa), below the recommended inflation pressure, do not continue driving. Contact a Holden Dealer.

    If the tyre pressure has dropped less than 10 psi (68 kPa), inflate to the recommended inflation pressure.
23. Wipe off any sealant from the wheel, tyre or vehicle.
24. Dispose of the used tyre sealant canister at a Holden Dealer or in accordance with local and State codes and practices. Replace with a new canister.

This is a temporary puncture repair. Take the vehicle to a Holden Dealer to have the tyre repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

Inflating tyres without sealant

1. Lift the lever (7) and pull the air-only delivery hose (4) from the bottom of the kit.
2. Remove the tyre valve cap by rotating it anticlockwise.
3. Push the air-only delivery hose (4) onto the tyre valve and push the lever (7) down to secure.
4. Plug the 12 volt power connection (6) into the vehicles power socket. See *Power Outlets on page 5-8*.

   Do not jam the 12 volt power connection cable in the door or window.
5. Start the engine and let it idle to ensure the battery does not run down.

⚠ Warning

Do not run the engine in an enclosed area or with passengers in the vehicle. See *Fuel on page 9-39* for exhaust gas warnings.

6. Switch the on/off switch (1) to the **I** position.

⚠ Warning

Do not over inflate tyres due to risk of injury or damage to the tyre. Refer to the tyre placard for recommended inflation pressure.

7. Check the pressure gauge (2).

   If there is no pressure reading while the compressor is running, check for leaks at the connection between the hose and the tyre valve.
8. Inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure using the air pressure gauge (2).

   The pressure gauge (2) reads slightly high while the compressor is on.
9. Switch the compressor off to get an accurate reading.

   The compressor may be switched on and off until the correct pressure is reached.

10. Switch the on/off switch (1) to the **O** position.

⚠ Warning

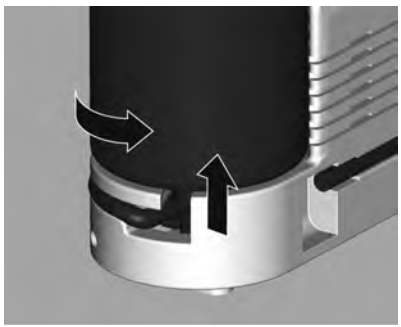
Be careful when handling the tyre sealant and air compressor kit as they may be hot after usage.

11. Disconnect the 12 volt power connection (6) and the air-only delivery hose (4).
12. Stow the air-only delivery hose (4) into the bottom of the kit and connect the air-only delivery hose onto the bottom of the tyre sealant canister. Push the lever (7) down to secure.
13. Replace the tyre valve cap.
14. Place the tyre sealant and air compressor kit back behind the driver's seat.

⚠ Warning

Always stow the tyre sealant and air compressor kit in its original position. Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury during heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or a collision.

Replacing the tyre sealant canister



After a temporary puncture repair, replace the tyre sealant canister.

To remove the canister:

1. Unlock the air-only delivery hose (4) from the tyre sealant canister by pulling up on the lever (7).
2. Pull the air-only delivery hose (4) from the tyre sealant canister.
3. Unwrap the sealant-air delivery hose (5) from the air compressor.
4. Rotate the tyre sealant canister (3) anticlockwise so the sealant-air delivery hose (5) is aligned with the slot in the compressor.
5. Lift the tyre sealant canister (3) from the compressor and replace with a new tyre sealant canister, available from a Holden Dealer.
6. Dispose of the tyre sealant canister at a Holden Dealer or in accordance with local or State codes and practices.

To install a new tyre sealant canister:

1. Align the sealant-air delivery hose (5) with the slot in the compressor.
2. Push the tyre sealant canister (3) down and rotate it clockwise.
3. Wrap the sealant-air delivery hose (5) around the compressor channel.
4. Push the air-only delivery hose (4) onto the tyre sealant canister (3) inlet.
5. Push the lever (7) down.

Tyre Changing

⚠ Warning

Passengers must be out of the vehicle when it is being jacked.

Do not jack a vehicle with a trailer attached. Remove the trailer first.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Only jack the vehicle on hard, level surfaces.

Ensure moving parts of the jack are adequately lubricated before use.

Use the jack only at the designated lifting points. Use in other locations may result in the vehicle falling off the jack, or damage to the vehicle.

If using a jack (or hoist) other than the jack supplied with the vehicle, see “Trolley jack or vehicle hoist” under *Tyre Changing on page 10-46*.

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

Use the jack only for lifting the vehicle when changing wheels.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

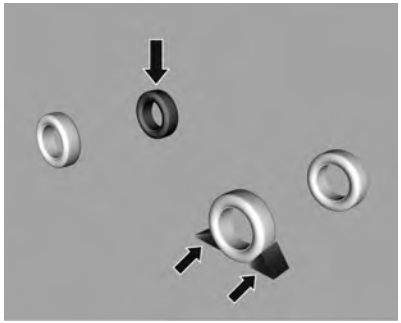
Vehicles with alloy wheels may have a steel spare wheel. Drive carefully and do not exceed 80 km/h if the tyre size or tread pattern of the spare tyre is different to the other tyres on the vehicle. Although the spare tyre was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly.

After installing the spare tyre on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible to check the inflation pressure is correct. Have the flat tyre repaired or replaced and installed back on the vehicle as soon as possible.

⚠ Warning

Redline vehicles fitted with different size wheels and tyres on the front and rear axles, can only fit the spare wheel to the front axle.

1. Park on a hard, level surface, in a safe location.
2. Apply the park brake.
3. Switch the hazard warning flashers on.
4. Turn the ignition off and remove the key from the vehicle.
5. Place manual transmissions in reverse gear and automatic transmissions in **P**.



6. Chock the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tyre with a suitable solid object.

7. To access the jack and tools, move and tilt the driver seat forward.
8. Lift up the access flap.

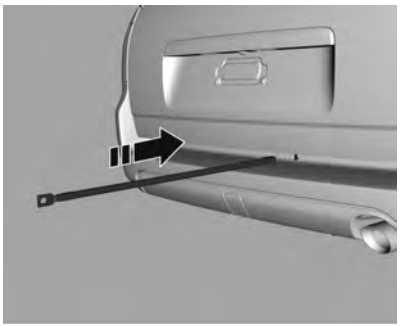
9. To remove the tool container, undo and remove the retaining nut.
10. Slide the jack package off the bolt and place next to the wheel to be changed.
11. Remove the tools and jack from the container. See *Tools on page 10-35*.

12. Loosen the wheel nuts in an anticlockwise direction, one half to a full turn, but do not remove the wheel nuts.

⚠ Caution

Ensure that the wheel wrench is fully unfolded.

Spare wheel access



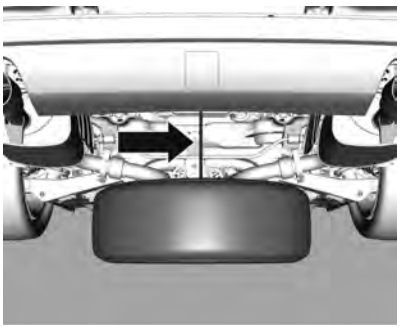
1. Insert the extension bar into the spare wheel lowering slot.

2. Twist the bar back and forth to engage into the carrier.

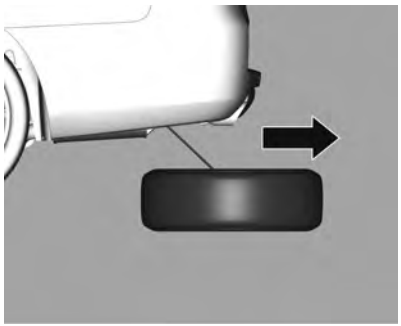
Note: Do not lower the tailgate while the extension bar is in place.

3. Attach the hook end of the jack handle to the extension bar.

4. Wind the jack handle/extension bar anticlockwise until it stops.



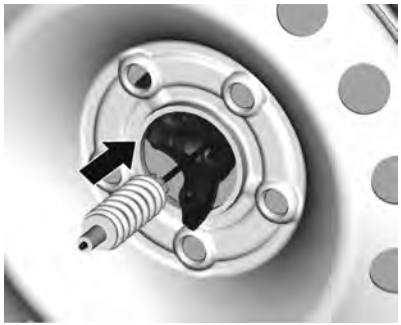
5. Ensure the spare wheel carrier is completely wound down and that the securing cable indicated, has free play.
6. Remove the jack handle and extension bar from the vehicle, once lowering is finished.



7. From behind the vehicle, grasp the spare wheel and pull it out towards the rear.

Note: If the spare wheel cannot be manoeuvred to the position shown above, repeat Steps 4 and 5.

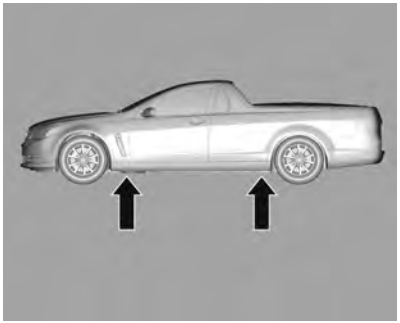
⚠ Warning
Do not get under the vehicle.



8. Hold the spare wheel up on an angle, while with the other hand, slide the carrier plate up the cable and thread it through the centre of the wheel.

9. Thread the end of the securing cable through the centre of the wheel.
10. Place the spare wheel next to the wheel with the flat tyre.

Jacking procedure



1. Position the jack beneath the jack location closest to the wheel being changed.

   There are four jack locations for use with the emergency jack, identified by cutouts in the underside of the door sill.

   The jack must not be used in any other positions.

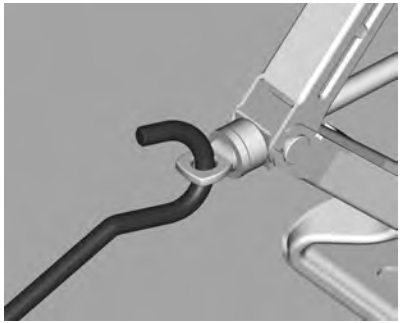
2. Wind the jack up by hand until it engages with the jacking point.

   Ensure that the jack is not tilted and the base is resting squarely on the ground.

⚠ Warning

Failure to position the jack as described could cause the vehicle to slip off the jack.

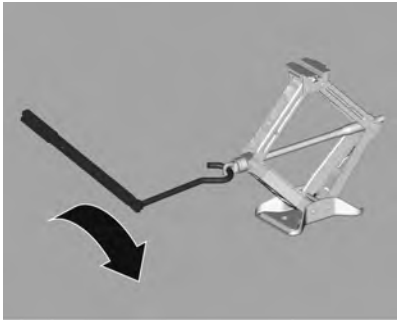
Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



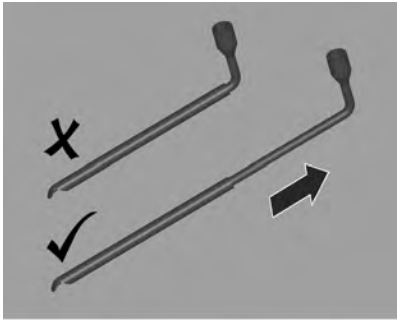
3. Fit the jack handle onto the jack by sliding the hook through the loop on the end of the jack.

Note: The jack handle must be unfolded into a right angle before it is used.

4. Grasp the hooked fold out section with one hand.
5. With the other hand, turn the handle 180 degrees as indicated.



6. Turn the handle clockwise as indicated.
7. Repeat the previous two steps until the bottom of the flat tyre is about 5 cm above the ground.
8. Remove the wheel nuts.



⚠ Caution

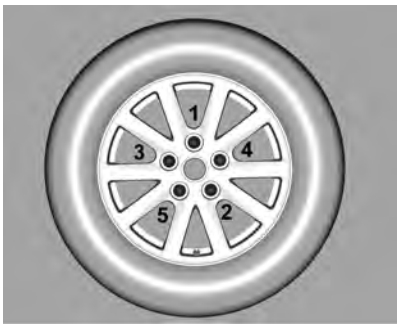
Ensure that the wheel wrench is fully extended.

9. Remove any dirt or rust from the wheel nuts and studs, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.
10. Exchange the wheel on the vehicle with the spare wheel.
11. Replace the wheel nuts and lightly tighten with the wheel nut wrench.

Note: Ensure the centre cap is assembled along with the wheel nuts, if secured by them.

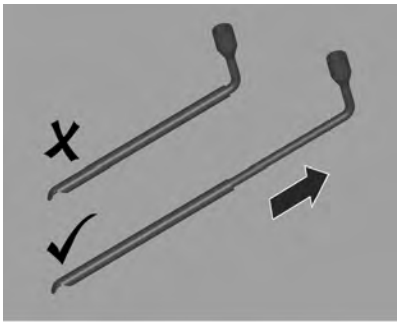
12. Lower the vehicle by reversing the jacking procedure.
13. Remove the jack from under the vehicle.

Wheel nut tightening sequence



1. With the wheel on the ground, use the extended wheel nut wrench to tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown.

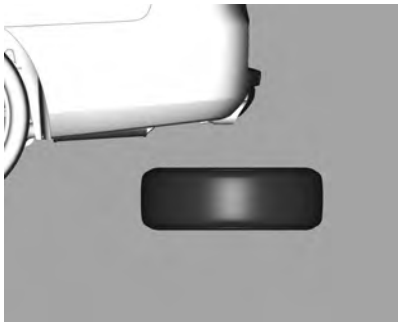
Note: Incorrect tightening of the wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and disc rotor damage. Tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See Warning under “Replacing the tools” later in this section.



⚠ Warning

To tighten the wheel nuts, the wrench must be fully extended.

Wheel storage



1. Before storing the wheel, remove any centre cap. Place the wheel face down behind the vehicle.

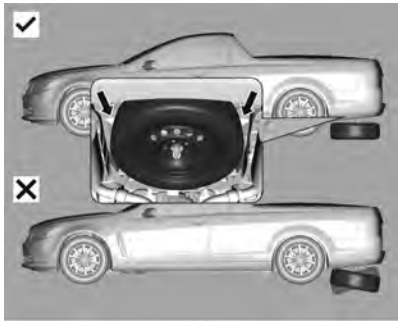
2. Hold the wheel up on an angle, while with the other hand thread the end of the securing cable through the centre of the wheel.
3. Thread the carrier plate of the securing cable through the centre of the wheel.
4. Allow the carrier plate to sit over the end of the cable and seat correctly in the centre hole of the wheel.
5. With the securing cable in position, push the wheel under the rear of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Do not get under the vehicle.

Note: Do not drag the face of the wheel across the ground.

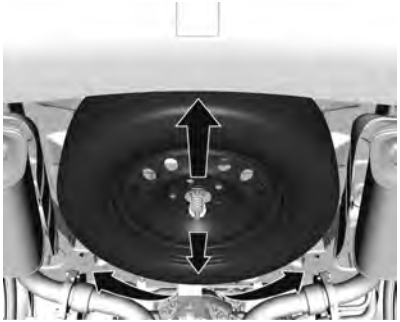
6. Insert the extension bar into the spare wheel lowering slot.
7. Twist the bar back and forth to engage into the carrier.
8. Attach the hook end of the jack handle to the extension bar.
9. Wind the jack handle/extension bar clockwise to raise the wheel.
10. During the raising procedure continue to ensure that the wheel is positioned centrally and horizontally on the securing cable.



11. Raise the wheel until the wheel is flush against the underbody supports, as shown.
12. Continue turning the jack handle clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice.

    This indicates that the wheel is secure and the cable is tight.
13. If the wheel is not flush against the underbody supports, lower the wheel and repeat from Step 9 onwards.

Note: The spare wheel carrier cannot be over tightened.



14. Make sure the wheel is stored securely.

    Check the security by pushing and pulling, then try to turn the wheel, as shown.

    If the wheel moves, use the extension bar and jack handle to tighten the wheel carrier, repeating Step 6 to 13.

⚠ Warning

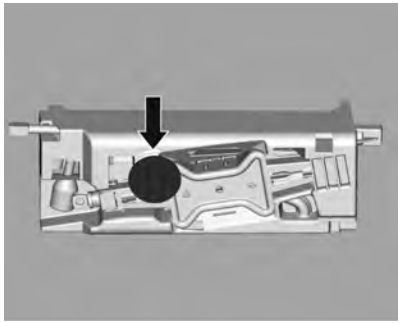
Do not use the spare wheel carrier if the wheel cannot be secured. Contact a Holden Dealer to have the carrier inspected.

Note: An alloy wheel with a flat tyre should always be stored under the vehicle using the spare wheel carrier.

However, storing it that way for an extended period could damage the wheel. Always store the wheel properly with the valve stem pointing down and have the wheel repaired or replaced and installed back on the vehicle as soon as possible.

15. Remove the jack handle and extension bar from the lowering slot.

Replacing the tools



1. Replace the tools behind the driver's seat.

   Ensure that the jack package is positioned onto the mounting bolt so that the retaining nut covers the top left corner of the jack as shown.

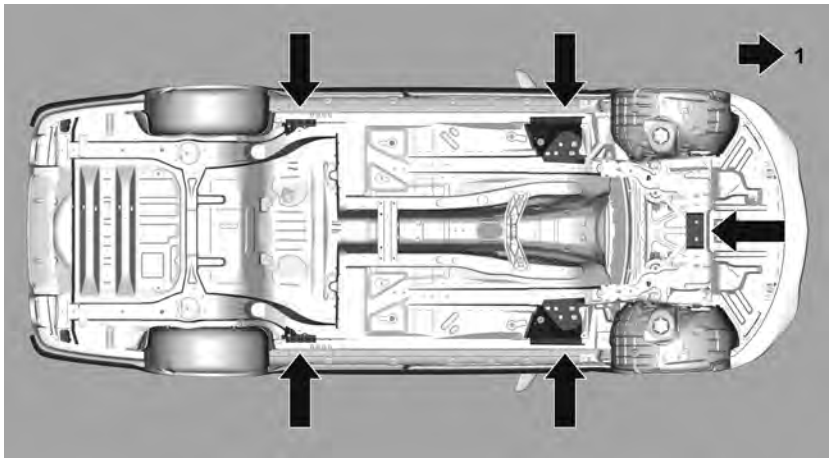
⚠ Warning

As soon as possible after changing a wheel, have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 170 ± 20 N•m (Newton metres). Wheel nuts must be tightened evenly to the correct torque in the sequence shown (refer to Step 1 of the “Wheel nut tightening sequence” previously in this section, as wheel nuts which have not been tightened properly could eventually allow the wheel to come off while the vehicle is moving.

Always have the flat tyre repaired or replaced and installed back on the vehicle as soon as possible.

The underbody mounted spare wheel needs to be stored with the valve stem pointing downwards.

Trolley jack or vehicle hoist



View from under the vehicle

1. Front of vehicle

If using a trolley jack or vehicle hoist to raise the vehicle, it is important that the jack be positioned under the centre of the suspension cross member or hoist pad locations, as shown.

⚠ Warning

Do not jack under the suspension control arms. Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Note: Always use the jack locations shown in Step 1 under “Jacking procedure” previously in this section, when using the original jack supplied with the vehicle.

This jack has been designed to correctly and safely lift the vehicle, provided the warnings are observed.

Jump Starting

Read the following warnings and procedure in full before attempting to jump start the vehicle.

If you are still unsure about jump starting, Holden strongly recommends for your safety and that of the vehicle that you seek the assistance of a suitably trained service technician.

⚠ Warning

Do not push start or tow start either a manual or an automatic vehicle. If unburnt fuel were to reach the catalytic converter and ignite, the converter could overheat or be destroyed by backfire. Therefore, if the battery is flat, jump start, but do not push start the vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Batteries produce explosive gases, contain corrosive acids and supply levels of electrical current high enough to cause burns. Therefore, adhere to the following when working near a battery:

- Do not attempt jump starting directly from the battery.
- Do not let the jumper lead clamps touch each other or other metal parts.
- Do not allow the jumper leads to contact any rotating engine components.
- Do not use open flames or sparks near the battery.
- Do not smoke near the battery.
- Never use a quick charger to start the engine.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- The battery must be removed from the vehicle for recharging.
- When refitting the battery make sure the vent tube is correctly installed.
- Only use the recommended battery otherwise the electric power management system may not work correctly. Refer to a Holden Dealer for battery replacement.
- Wear eye protection such as safety glasses and avoid leaning over the battery.
- Battery acid is corrosive. If it gets on your skin, wash with plenty of water immediately. If it gets in your eyes you should not only flush with lots of water, but should also seek medical help. Battery acid

(Continued)

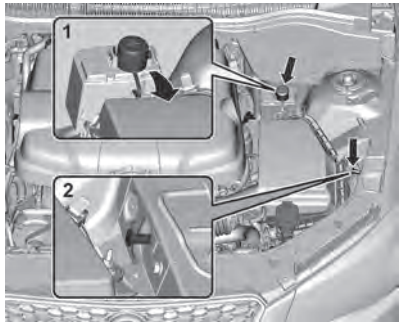
Warning (Continued)

also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash it off immediately.

- Remove rings, metal watch bands and other metal jewellery before working around the battery.
- If a permanently connected hands free telephone kit is fitted to the vehicle, remove the fuse for the telephone kit before jump starting. Remember to replace the fuse afterwards.

Note: The battery in both vehicles must have a negative earth and a 12 volt rating.

Jump starting connection posts



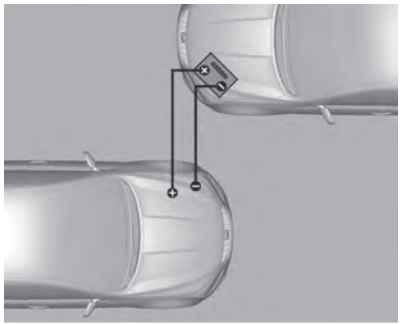
The jump start positive (1) and negative (2) connection posts are located in the engine bay on the passenger side.

These posts are to be used instead of a direct connection to a battery.

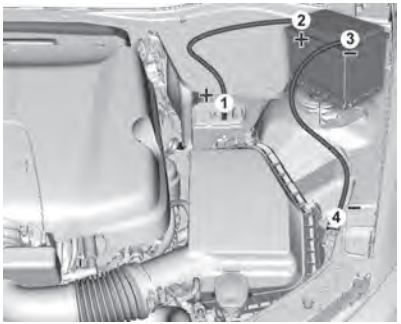
The positive jump start connection post is covered by a red cap.

1. Push the clip to release the cap.
2. Remove to expose the terminal.

Jump starting procedure



1. Position the two vehicles so that they are NOT touching.
2. Apply the park brakes.
3. For automatic transmission; Place the shift lever in P. For manual transmission; Place the shift lever in neutral.
4. Turn the ignition switch off.
5. Turn off all lamps, accessories and the air conditioning in both vehicles, except the hazard warning flashers or any lights needed for the work area.



6. Connect one end of the RED jumper lead to the jump start positive connection post (1).
7. Connect the other end of the RED jumper lead to the positive terminal (2) of the charged battery.
8. Connect one end of the BLACK jumper lead to the negative terminal (3) of the charged battery.
9. Connnect the other end of the BLACK jumper lead to the jump start negative post (4).

Note: Route the jumper leads so they cannot catch on any moving parts within the engine compartment.

10. Start the engine in the vehicle with the charged battery and allow to idle for at least 5 minutes.
11. Start the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery.
12. Allow both vehicles to run for at least 5 minutes with the jumper leads connected, to stabilise the battery voltage.
13. Leave the engines running while removing the BLACK negative jumper lead first, followed by the RED positive jumper lead.

Note:

- Refit the red protective cap to the positive jump start connection post following removal of the jumper leads.
- While removing each clamp, do not touch any other metal objects while the other end remains attached.

Towing the Vehicle

⚠ Warning

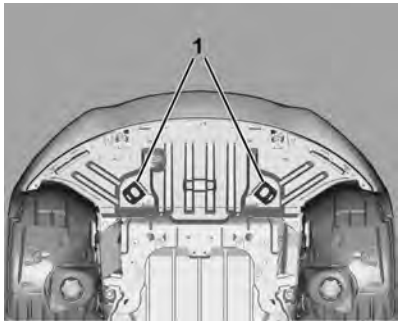
Flat tray towing is the only recommended towing procedure.

A slot location is provided to move a bogged or disabled vehicle a short distance or to pull the vehicle onto a flat tray tow truck.

Use only wheel lashings to secure the vehicle to the flat tray tow truck.

Do not attach towing equipment to the bumpers or brackets, suspension or cross members.

To prevent damage, use only proper towing equipment.



Attachment locations

An oval shaped slot (1) is provided underneath the front of the vehicle.

Access to the slot is via the circular hole in the black plastic splash shield underneath the front of the vehicle.

A hook of the appropriate size, attached to the cable, should be used in the slot.

A rope cannot be threaded through the slot.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Washing

The paintwork of the vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage. Failure to do so may result in permanent damage, particularly in hot weather conditions.

Road bloom is a gradual build up of road and environmental grime. This should be removed with a paint cleaner once a year, in addition to normal washing.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. Never use an automatic

wash that requires anything touching the paint (other than water). The wipers must be switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a Holden Dealer.

⚠ Caution

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and chamois off the vehicle. Rinse chamois frequently. Use separate chamois for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

Note: For certain body colours, some variation in gloss and colour may exist in the engine bay or load area and on the underside of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Take care when moving the vehicle after washing, in case water has affected the brakes. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected. To dry them quickly, lightly apply the brakes while maintaining a slow forward speed with a clear area ahead, until brake performance returns to normal.

Exterior lamps

Headlamp and other lamp covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive, solvent based cleaners or caustic agents and do not dry-clean them.

Air intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the bonnet and windscreen and below the front bumper, when washing the vehicle.

Polishing and waxing

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads).

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

Windows and windscreen wiper blades

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

- Never use abrasive cleaners to clean glass.
- Refer to a Holden Dealer for windscreen washer additive.
- Old wiper blades can cause windscreen scratching. Regularly inspect and replace them.

> **⚠ Caution**
>
> Do not operate the wiper blades by hand as this damages the wiper drive mechanism.

When cleaning the rear window, make sure the heating element inside is not damaged.

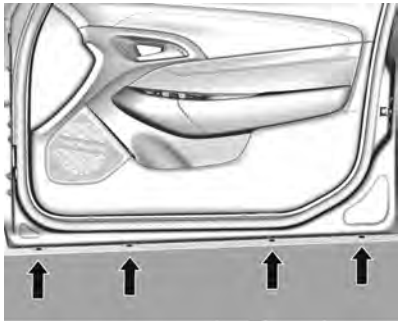
Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.

Wheels and tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

- Remove oil and grease with soap and water or detergent.
- Do not use petrol to clean tyres.
- Use a good quality tyre and bumper shine if required.
- A good quality wheel cleaner can be used for cleaning alloy wheels.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners.

Door drain holes



- Clear drain holes at the bottom of the door panels from dirt and other foreign materials which could trap water inside the panels.
- Clean clogged drain holes with a plastic pin or peg.
- Avoid scratching the paint work.

Paintwork damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by your Holden Dealer.

⚠ Caution

Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

Underbody

Substances can cause rust under the vehicle.

- Hose the underbody with clean water whenever the vehicle is washed.
- Where the vehicle is exposed to heavy concentrations of corrosive materials, inspect and wash the complete underbody at least once each year, preferably after winter exposure.

Interior Care

⚠ Warning

Many cleaning products are toxic, flammable or may damage the interior. When cleaning the interior, avoid volatile cleaners such as acetone, lacquer thinners, enamel reducers, nail polish removers, or cleaners such as laundry soaps, bleaches or reducing agents. Never use carbon tetrachloride, petrol or naphtha for any cleaning purpose. Ensure that the vehicle is well ventilated while using any cleaners and always follow the cleaning product manufacturer's recommendations. Water based cleaners, rather than solvent based cleaners, are recommended.

Steam cleaning of seats is not recommended.

Interior and upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

The instrument panel should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clean seat belts with a mild, non-abrasive soap and lukewarm water.

After washing, thoroughly, sponge the solution out of the belts.

Leather

Clean regularly using a leather revitaliser or mild detergent.

- Apply revitaliser using a lint free cloth and rub it onto the leather.
- Do not saturate the leather with the cleaner and do not pour on directly.
- Allow to dry naturally.

- For deeply embedded soil and dirt, use a leather cleaner.
- After using a leather cleaner/ revitaliser, apply a leather protector.

  A leather protector is designed to repel dirt and provides water resistance.

Note:

- Clean and protect leather at least twice a year.
- Do not use synthetic cloths or brushes.
- Leather is a natural product and may have natural markings, variation in graining, colouring and wrinkling.
- Leather has an elasticity and may stretch. This is a natural characteristic of leather.

⚠ Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

Plastic and rubber parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high pressure jet cleaners.

Floor Mats

- Pull up the small peg at the corner to remove the mat.
- Push the mat down onto the peg to replace.

⚠ Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the accelerator pedal and/or brake pedal. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury.

Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal.

Original equipment and Genuine Holden Accessory floor mats are designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that Holden approved floor mats be purchased.

Non-genuine floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

Service and Maintenance

General Information
Service Information 11-1

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-2
Maintenance Replacement Parts 11-2

General Information

Service Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

See your Service/Warranty Booklet for the service schedules and for more information.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Engine Type	3.6L (SIDI) direct injection V6	6.0L Generation IV V8
Engine oil specification	5W-30; dexos (dexos™ 1)	
Coolant specification	50% clean fresh water and 50% Dexcool® anti-freeze coolant, conforming to specification number GM6277M	
Automatic transmission fluid	Dexron® VI	
Manual transmission fluid	SAE 75W-90 GL5	Holden part number 19264570
Differential oil	Castrol SAF Carbon Modified SAE 75W/85 API GL5 GM	
Brake and clutch fluid	DOT 4 Hydraulic brake fluid conforming to specification number GMW3356	

Maintenance Replacement Parts

Battery	Maintenance free 12 V, with ventilation system. LN2 460 cold cranking amps (CCA), 85 minutes reserve capacity. The vehicle may have an LN3 battery. LN3 600 cold cranking amps (CCA), 120 minutes reserve capacity.

⚠ Warning
Use only a manufacturer recommended battery with a ventilation system. Use of other batteries may affect the electric power management system and allow explosive gases into the vehicle cabin. Refer to a Holden Dealer or authorised repairer.

✍ NOTES

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 12-1
Identification Plate 12-2

Vehicle Data
Engine Data 12-4
Vehicle Weight 12-5
Vehicle Dimensions 12-6
Capacities and Specifications 12-6
Tyre Pressure 12-7

Vehicle Identification

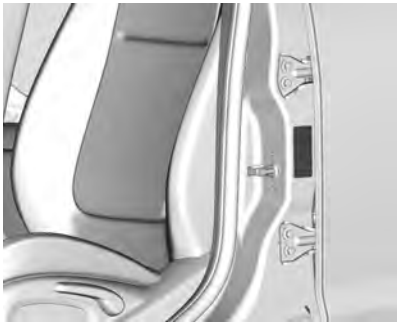
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

ISOVIN plates

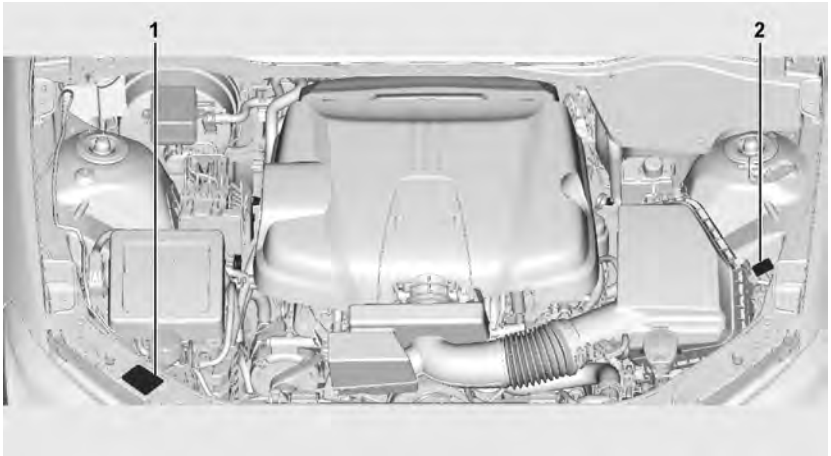
Each vehicle has its own, individual International Standards Organisation Vehicle Identification Number (ISOVIN), which is shown behind the windscreen on the left side and under the right seat, under a carpet flap.

Identification Plate

Compliance label



This label shows the vehicle make, model series, date of manufacture, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), approved seating capacity and approval number.



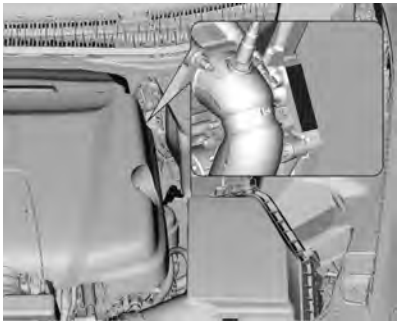
Cooling system/air conditioning label

Label (1) shows the warnings for the air conditioning and cooling system as well as information on the air conditioning refrigerant and compressor oil.

Body and option plate

Plate (2) shows the model identification, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), paint and trim colour combination, air conditioning, paint number, engine, transmission, axle ratio options, suspension options (where applicable) and build date.

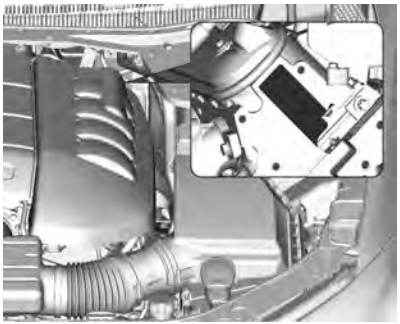
Engine number location



V6 engine

The engine number is located at the rear of the engine on the passenger side.

The engine number can be viewed from the top, using a mirror if necessary.



V8 engine

The engine number is located at the rear of the engine on the passenger side.

The engine number can be viewed from the top, using a mirror, after the engine cover has been removed. See *Engine Cover on page 10-5*.

Vehicle Data

Engine Data

Engine type	3.6L (SIDI) direct injection V6	6.0L Generation IV V8
Engine	3564 cc	5967 cc
Engine power and torque	Please refer to holden.com.au	
Fuel	Petrol	Petrol
Octane rating (RON)	Unleaded regular 91 or higher	
Ethanol compatibility	E10	E10

Air conditioning specifications

Refrigerant type	R-134A
Refrigerant charge	480 g +/- 20 g
Compressor oil type	Polyalkylene glycol (Holden part no. 90510419)

⚠ Warning

The air conditioning system should be serviced by qualified personnel only. Improper service methods may cause personal injury.

Vehicle Weight

Axle loads

Maximum front and rear axle loads

Do not exceed the maximum axle loads, including the weight of any fitted accessories.

If unsure, the vehicle should be weighed at a weighbridge.

Total weight includes body, mechanicals, cargo and passengers.

	Front axle load (kg)	Rear axle load (kg)
Evoke	1080	1450
SV6	1080	1350
SS, SS V	1120	1350

Note: If the vehicle is fitted with Genuine Holden Accessory 20 inch wheels and Holden recommended 245/40 R20 95Y tyres on all four wheels, the maximum rear axle load is 1,300 kg.

Some vehicles may not be suitable for Genuine Holden Accessory wheel fitment. Contact your Holden Dealer.

Refer to the vehicle's compliance label for gross vehicle mass (GVM) figures.

Carrying capacity

Carrying capacity is the maximum capacity of the vehicle for the carriage of all non-standard items including cargo carrying devices (e.g. tray or body, if applicable), the cargo itself, occupants, optional equipment and accessories.

Light commercial vehicles, depending on their model and specification, have different carrying capacities.

Vehicle Dimensions

	Dimensions (mm)								
	Length	Width excl. mirrors	Width incl. mirrors	Height	Wheel base	Front overhang	Rear overhang	Front track	Rear track
Evoke	5062	1898	2099	1494	3009	869	1184	1600	1614
SV6	5083	1898	2099	1494	3009	890	1184	1592	1606
SS	5083	1898	2099	1494	3009	890	1184	1592	1606
SS V	5083	1898	2099	1494	3009	890	1184	1593	1606
SS V Redline	5083	1898	2099	1494	3009	890	1184	1593	1588

The above figures are based on the design dimensions.

Capacities and Specifications

Engine type	3.6L (SIDI) direct injection V6	6.0L Generation IV V8
Refill engine oil including filter (approximately)	6.7 L	7.6 L

Engine type	3.6L (SIDI) direct injection V6	6.0L Generation IV V8
Coolant (approximately)	10.3 L (manual) 10.1 L (automatic)	10.2 L (manual) 10.0 L (automatic)
Fuel tank	71.0 L	71.0 L

Tyre Pressure

Evoke Ute

Tyre size	Wheel size and profile	Recommended pressure									
		Normal load				Maximum load				Spare	
		Front		Rear		Front		Rear		—	
		kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI
225/60 R16 XL 102H	16 x 7.0 J	250	36	250	36	270	39	300	44	300	44
T155/70 R18	18 x 4.0 T	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	420	60

SV6 Ute

Tyre size	Wheel size and profile	Recommended pressure									
		Normal load				Maximum load				Spare	
		Front		Rear		Front		Rear		—	
		kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI
245/45 R18 XL 100V	18 x 8.0 J	250	36	250	36	270	39	300	44	300	44
T155/70 R18	18 x 4.0 T	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	420	60

SS Ute

Tyre size	Wheel size and profile	Recommended pressure									
		Normal load				Maximum load				Spare	
		Front		Rear		Front		Rear		—	
		kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI
245/45 R18 XL 100V	18 x 8.0 J	250	36	250	36	270	39	300	44	300	44
T155/70 R18	18 x 4.0 T	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	420	60

SS V Series Ute

Tyre size	Wheel size and profile	Recommended pressure									
		Normal load				Maximum load				Spare	
		Front		Rear		Front		Rear		—	
		kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI
245/40 R19 XL 98W	19 x 8.5 J	250	36	250	36	270	39	300	44	300	44
T155/70 R18	18 x 4.0 T	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	420	60

SS V Series Redline Ute

Tyre size	Wheel size and profile	Recommended pressure									
		Normal load				Maximum load				Spare	
		Front		Rear		Front		Rear		—	
		kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI
245/40 R19 XL 98W	19 x 8.5 J	250	36	—	—	270	39	—	—	—	—
275/35 R19 XL 100Y	19 x 9.0 J	—	—	250	36	—	—	300	44	—	—

✍ NOTES

Customer Information

Customer Information
Owner Assistance 13-1

Customer Information

Owner Assistance

Holden Customer Care

At Holden, we want you to be completely satisfied with your ownership experience. This applies to your vehicle and any Holden representative you may deal with.

Refer below for two options for seeking assistance with your query.

Holden Dealerships

Holden encourages you to seek assistance from your Holden Dealership. Each Holden Dealership is equipped to manage any sales, servicing, parts or technical query.

In the instance that you wish to escalate a query to a higher level of staff, further options are available to you.

As a first step, Holden suggests you discuss any concern with the relevant Department Manager (Sales Manager or Service Manager).

Alternatively, the Dealership General Manager or Dealer Principal will also be happy to assist you.

Holden Customer Care Office

Should you wish to speak to a Holden representative, you are welcome to contact the Holden Customer Care team.

Refer below for operating hours and various methods of communication.

Operating Hours

Weekdays: 8am – 7pm AEST

Saturday: 9am – 1pm AEST

Telephone

Holden Customer Care can be telephoned from anywhere within Australia for only the cost of a local call.

The contact number is:

1800 033 349

Email

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercare@gm.com

Written Correspondence

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

The Manager
Holden Customer Care Centre
GPO Box 1714
Melbourne 3001

Your written correspondence should clearly outline your concern or query and include:

- Your name and address
- Telephone numbers, both private and business
- Servicing dealer's name and address
- Vehicle model
- Vehicle identification number (I.S.O.V.I.N.), refer to the inside front cover of the Service/ Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box
- Date of purchase
- Current odometer reading

Most of this information will be found on the Vehicle Identification Certificate, located inside the front cover of the Service/Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box.

Before you write however, remember that the telephone is the quicker and more efficient means of communication.

New Zealand

The information in this Owner's Handbook applies primarily to Australian Holden vehicles and there may be some differences to the Warranty and Owner Assistance provisions for New Zealand.

Applicable details for New Zealand are set out in the Holden Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet enclosed in the New Zealand glove box wallet.

New Zealand Assistance can be reached on:

0800 HOLDEN (0800 465 336)

This number provides access to New Zealand Roadside Assistance as well as New Zealand Customer Care.

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercare@gm.com

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

The Manager
Holden Customer Care Centre
PO Box 11195
Ellerslie
Auckland 1542

A

Accessory Power 9-7
Add-On Electrical
Equipment 9-47
Adjustable Air Vents 8-6
Adjustments
Seat, Initial Drive 3-2
Advanced Parking Assist 9-36
Air Conditioning 8-1
Air Conditioning Regular
Operation 8-7
Air Filter, Passenger
Compartment 8-7
Air Intake 8-7
Airbag System
Check 3-11
What Will You See after an
Airbag Inflates? 3-11
Airbags
Curtain 3-10
Front 3-8
Readiness Light 5-14
Side 3-9
System Check 3-7
Alarm
Vehicle Security 2-13
AM-FM Radio 7-15
Antilock Brake
System (ABS) 9-14
Warning Light 5-16
Appearance Care
Exterior 10-59
Interior 10-62
Audio
Bluetooth 7-37
Audio Players 7-27
CD 7-27
MP3 7-29
Audio System
Radio Reception 7-17
Theft-Deterrent Feature 7-3
Automatic
Door Locks 2-13
Headlamp System 6-2
Transmission 9-8
Automatic Transmission
Shift Lever 9-9
Transmission Display 9-8
Auxiliary
Devices 7-37

B

Battery 10-17
Jump Starting 10-56
Power Protection 6-6
Voltage and Charging
Messages 5-24
Bluetooth 7-66
Bluetooth Audio 7-37
Bonnet 10-3
Brake
Parking, Electric 9-15
System Warning Light 5-15
Brakes
Antilock 9-14
Assist 9-16
Fluid 10-15
System Messages 5-25
Break-In, New Vehicle 9-2
Bulb Replacement
Front Turn Signal Lamps ... 10-22
Headlamps 10-18, 10-19
Interior Lamps 10-25
Number Plate Lamps 10-25
Tail lamps 10-23
Buying New Tyres 10-39

C

Camera, Rear Vision 9-31
Capacities and
Specifications 12-6
CD Player 7-27
Centre Console Storage 4-4
Chains, Tyre 10-40
Charging System Light 5-14
Check
Engine Light 5-14
Child Restraint Installation
Locations 3-15
Child Restraints
Infants and Young
Children 3-13
Installation Locations 3-15
Older Children 3-12
Systems 3-13
Cleaning
Exterior Care 10-59
Interior Care 10-62
Clock 5-8
Cluster, Instrument 5-12
Competitive Driving Mode 9-20
Compressor Kit, Tyre
Sealant 10-40
Configure Menu 7-53
Control System
Emission 10-1
Controls
Steering Wheel 7-7
Coolant
Engine 10-8
Engine Temperature
Gauge 5-13
Cooling System
Engine Messages 5-26
Cover
Engine 10-5
Tonneau 4-4
Cruise Control 9-21
Light 5-19
Messages 5-25
Cupholders 4-1
Curtain Airbag System 3-10
Customer-installed
Equipment, Notices 3-11

D

Database Coverage
Explanations 7-59
Daytime Running
Lamps (DRL) 6-2
Destination, Navigation 7-45
Devices
Auxiliary 7-37
USB 7-30
Dimensions
Vehicle 12-6
Displays
Automatic Transmission 9-8
Dome Lamps 6-5
Door
Ajar Light 5-19
Ajar Messages 5-25
Ajar Reminder 2-13
Locks 2-9
Driver Information
Centre (DIC) 5-20
Driving
Environment 9-2
Driving Mode
Competitive 9-20

E

Electric Parking Brake 9-15
Electric Parking Brake Light ... 5-16
Electrical Equipment,
Add-On 9-47
Electrical System
Fuses 10-26
Electronic Stability Control 9-18
Electronic Stability Control
(ESC)/Traction Control
System (TCS) Indicator
Warning Light 5-18
Electronic Stability Control
Indicator Light 5-18
Emission Control System 10-1
Emission Information 10-1
Engine
Check and Service Engine
Soon Light 5-14
Compartment Overview 10-4
Coolant 10-8
Coolant Temperature
Gauge 5-13
Cooling System Messages ...5-26
Cover 10-5
Oil Messages 5-26
Engine (cont'd)
Overheating 10-10
Power Messages 5-26
Pressure Light 5-18
Starting 9-7
Engine Data 12-4
Entry Lighting 6-6
Exit Lighting 6-6
Exterior Lamp Controls 6-1

F

Fixed Air Vents 8-7
Flashers, Hazard Warning 6-3
Flat Tyre
Changing 10-46
Floor Mats 10-63
Fluid
Brakes 10-15
Washer 10-15
Fog Lamps 6-4
Forward Collision Alert
(FCA) System 9-23
Forward Collision Alert
(FCA) Warning Light 5-17
Front Airbag System 3-8
Front Fog Lamp
Light 5-19
Front Seat Position Seats
Adjustment 3-2
Front Storage 4-2
Front Turn Signal Lamps 10-22
Fuel 9-39
Filling the Tank 9-41
Gauge 5-12
Low Fuel Warning Light 5-19
Recommended 9-40
System Messages 5-27
Fuses 10-26

G

Gauges
Engine Coolant
Temperature 5-13
Fuel 5-12
Odometer 5-12
Speedometer 5-12
Tachometer 5-12
Trip Odometer 5-12
Warning Lights and
Indicators 5-10

General Information
Vehicle Care 10-1
Global Positioning
System (GPS) 7-57
Glove Box
Lamps 6-5
Glovebox 4-1

H

Hands-Free Phone 7-75
Hazard Warning Flashers 6-3
Head Restraints 3-1
Head-up Display 5-22
Headlamps 10-19
Automatic 6-2
Bulb Replacement 10-18
Daytime Running
Lamps (DRL) 6-2
High-Beam On Light 5-19
High/Low Beam Changer 6-1
Lamps On Reminder 5-19
High-Beam On Light 5-19
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 9-17
Horn 1-9, 5-6
How to Wear Seat Belts
Properly 3-5

I

Identification Plate 12-2
Ignition Positions 9-4
Infants and Young Children,
Restraints 3-13
Info
Quick 7-18
INFOCARD 2-3
Information
Service 11-1
Information on Loading the
Vehicle 4-11
Instrument Cluster 5-12
Instrument Panel
Overview 1-6
Instrument Panel Overview 5-3
Internet Radio
Pandora 7-18
Stitcher 7-23
Introduction 7-1

J

Jack 10-50
Jump Starting 10-56

K

Key and Lock Messages 5-27
Keyless Entry
Remote (RKE) System 2-4
Keys 2-1

L

Lamps
Daytime Running (DRL) 6-2
Dome 6-5
Exterior Controls 6-1
Fog 6-4
Front Turn Signal 10-22
Glove Box 6-5
Interior 10-25
Malfunction Indicator 5-14
Messages 5-27
Number Plate 10-25

Lamps (cont'd)
On Reminder 5-19
Reading 6-5
Tail lamps 10-23
Lane Departure Warning 9-33
Lane Departure Warning Light 5-17
Light
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator Warning 5-18
Lighting
Entry 6-6
Exit 6-6
Illumination Control 6-4
Lights
Airbag Readiness 5-14
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 5-16
Brake System Warning 5-15
Charging System 5-14
Cruise Control 5-19
Door Ajar 5-19
Electric Parking Brake 5-16
Engine Oil Pressure 5-18
Front Fog Lamp 5-19
Lights (cont'd)
High-Beam On 5-19
High/Low Beam Changer 6-1
Lane Departure Warning 5-17
Low Fuel Warning 5-19
Seat Belt Reminders 5-13
Security 5-19
Service Vehicle Soon 5-15
Traction Off 5-17
Loading the Vehicle 4-11
Locks
Automatic Door 2-13
Door 2-9
Low Fuel Warning Light 5-19

M

Maintenance
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 8-7
Maintenance Schedule
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-2
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 5-14
Manual Transmission 9-13
Map Data Updates 7-59
Maps 7-42
Menu
Configure 7-53
Messages
Battery Voltage and Charging 5-24
Brake System 5-25
Door Ajar 5-25
Engine Cooling System 5-26
Engine Oil 5-26
Engine Power 5-26
Fuel System 5-27
Key and Lock 5-27
Lamp 5-27
Object Detection System 5-28
Ride Control System 5-28
Security 5-28
Service Vehicle 5-28
Starting the Vehicle 5-29
Transmission 5-29
Vehicle 5-24
Vehicle Reminder 5-29
Washer Fluid 5-30
Window 5-30
Messaging
Text 7-73

Mirrors
Manual Rear View 2-15
Power 2-15
MP3 7-29

N

Navigation
Destination 7-45
Symbols 7-43
Using the System 7-39
New vehicle running-in 9-2
Notices for
Customer-installed
Equipment 3-11

O

Object Detection System
Messages 5-28
Object Detection, Side Blind
Zone Alert (SBZA) 9-29
Odometer 5-12
Trip 5-12
Oil
Engine 10-6
Messages 5-26
Pressure Light 5-18
Older Children, Restraints 3-12
Operation, Infotainment
System 7-12
Other Service Items
Air Conditioning System 8-1
Outlets
Power 5-8
Overheating, Engine 10-10
Overview
Instrument Panel 5-3
Overview, Infotainment
System 7-3
Owner Assistance 13-1

P

Pandora Internet Radio 7-18
Parking 9-8
Parking Assist 9-25
Advanced 9-36
Passenger Compartment Air
Filter 8-7
Personalisation
Vehicle 5-30
Phone
Bluetooth 7-66
Hands-Free 7-75
Power
Mirrors 2-15
Outlets 5-8
Protection, Battery 6-6
Retained Accessory (RAP) 9-7
Seat Adjustment 3-3
Windows 2-16
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts ... 3-7
Pressure
Tyre 12-7
Problems with Route
Guidance 7-58

Q

Quick Info 7-18

R

Radio Data System (RDS) 7-17
Radios
AM-FM Radio 7-15
Reception 7-17
Reading Lamps 6-5
Rear Storage 4-2
Rear View Mirrors 2-15
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 9-31

Recommended
Fuel 9-40
Recommended Fluids and
Lubricants 11-2
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE)
System 2-4
Remote Vehicle Start 2-7
Replacement Parts
Airbags 3-11
Maintenance 11-2
Replacing Airbag System 3-11
Replacing Seat Belt System
Parts after a Crash 3-7
Restraints
Where to Put 3-14
Retained Accessory
Power (RAP) 9-7
Ride Control Systems 9-18
Electronic Stability (ESC) 9-18
Messages 5-28
Rotation, Tyres 10-38

S

Sealant Kit, Tyre 10-40
Seat Belts
Care 3-7
Child Restraints 3-15
How to Wear Seat Belts
Properly 3-5
Reminders 5-13
Replacing after a Crash 3-7
Three-Point 3-6
Use During Pregnancy 3-7
Seats
Head Restraints 3-1
Position, Front 3-2
Power Adjustment, Front 3-3
Security
Light 5-19
Messages 5-28
Vehicle Alarm 2-13
Service
Engine Soon Light 5-14
Vehicle Messages 5-28
Vehicle Soon Light 5-15
Service and Maintenance
Service Information 11-1
Service Information 11-1
Settings 7-64
Shift Lever 9-9
Side Airbag System 3-9
Side Blind Zone Alert 9-29
Signals, Turn and
Lane-Change 6-3
Specifications and
Capacities 12-6
Speedometer 5-12
Start Assist, Hills 9-17
Start Vehicle, Remote 2-7
Starting the Engine 9-7
Starting the Vehicle
Messages 5-29
Steering
Wheel Adjustment 5-5
Wheel Controls 5-5
Steering Wheel Controls 7-7
Stitcher Internet Radio 7-23
Storage
Rear 4-2

Storage Areas
Centre Console 4-4
Front 4-2
Glovebox 4-1
Information on Loading the Vehicle 4-11
Sunglasses 4-2
Sunglass Storage 4-2
Symbols, Navigation 7-43
System
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) 9-23

T

Tachometer 5-12
Tail lamps 10-23
Technical Data
Tyre Pressure 12-7
Text 7-73
Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-14
Thread Depth 10-38
Three-Point Seat Belt 3-6
Time 5-8
Tonneau Cover 4-4
Tools 10-35
Towing
Trailer 9-42
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) ... 9-47
Vehicle 10-59
Traction
Control System (TCS) 9-17
Off Light 5-17
Trailer
Sway Control (TSC) 9-47
Towing 9-42
Transmission
Automatic 9-8
Messages 5-29
Transmission Display 9-8
Trip Odometer 5-12
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 6-3
Tyre Pressure 12-7
Tyres
Buying New Tyres 10-39
Chains 10-40
Changing 10-46
Tyres (cont'd)
Rotation 10-38
Sealant and Compressor Kit 10-40
Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance 10-39

U

Updates
Map Data 7-59
USB 7-30
Using the System 7-7

V

Vehicle
Alarm System 2-13
Identification Number (VIN) 12-1
Messages 5-24
Personalisation 5-30
Positioning 7-57
Reminder Messages 5-29
Remote Start 2-7
Service Soon Light 5-15
Towing 10-59

Vehicle Care
Tyre Pressure 10-36
Vehicle Dimensions 12-6
Vehicle Identification
Plate 12-2
Vehicle Weight 12-5
Ventilation
Adjustable Air 8-6
Fixed Air Vents 8-7
Voice Recognition 7-59

W

Warning
Brake System Light 5-15
Warning Light
Forward Collision
Alert (FCA) 5-17
Warning Lights, Gauges,
and Indicators 5-10
Warnings
Hazard Flashers 6-3
Washer Fluid 10-15
Messages 5-30
Weights
Vehicle 12-5
Wheels
Alignment and Tyre
Balance 10-39
Where to Put the Restraint 3-14
Windows
Messages 5-30
Power 2-16
Windscreen
Wiper/Washer 5-7